

Public Document Pack

4 January 2019

Our Ref Council
Your Ref.
Contact. Committee Services
Direct Dial. (01462) 474648
Email. amelia.mcinally@north-herts.gov.uk

To: The Chairman and Members of North Hertfordshire District Council

You are invited to attend a

MEETING OF THE COUNCIL

to be held in the

**COUNCIL CHAMBER, COUNCIL OFFICES, GERNON ROAD,
LETCHWORTH GARDEN CITY**

on

THURSDAY, 17 JANUARY 2019

at

7.30 PM

Yours sincerely



Jeanette Thompson
Service Director – Legal and Community

Agenda **Part I**

Item	Page
1. APOLOGIES FOR ABSENCE	
2. MINUTES - 22 NOVEMBER 2018 To take as read and approve as a true record the minutes of the meeting of this Committee held on the 22 November 2018. <i>Minutes to follow.</i>	
3. NOTIFICATION OF OTHER BUSINESS Members should notify the Council of other business which they wish to be discussed by the Council at the end of either Part I or Part II business set out in the agenda. They must state the circumstances which they consider justify the business being considered as a matter of urgency. The Chairman will decide whether any item(s) raised will be considered.	
4. CHAIRMAN'S ANNOUNCEMENTS Members are reminded that any declarations of interest in respect of any business set out in the agenda, should be declared as either a Disclosable Pecuniary Interest or Declarable Interest and are required to notify the Chairman of the nature of any interest declared at the commencement of the relevant item on the agenda. Members declaring a Disclosable Pecuniary Interest must withdraw from the meeting for the duration of the item. Members declaring a Declarable Interest who wish to exercise a 'Councillor Speaking Right', must declare this at the same time as the interest, move to the public area before speaking to the item and then must leave the room before the debate and vote.	
5. PUBLIC PARTICIPATION To receive petitions and presentations from members of the public including: (i) Miss Jacqueline May McDonald representing the Future of Hitchin Town Hall and Museum Social Media Group.	
6. ITEMS REFERRED FROM OTHER COMMITTEES To receive referrals from other committees.	
6a. UPDATED CONTRACT PROCUREMENT RULES FOR 2018/19 REPORT OF THE LEGAL COMMERCIAL TEAM MANAGER	1 - 54
To consider adoption of the Contract Procurement Rules as recommended by Finance, Audit and Risk Committee on 17 December 2018.	

- 6b. CHIEF INSPECTOR JULIE WHEATLEY** 55 - 56
 To consider the recommendation by the Cabinet on 18 December 2018 to recognise the exceptional contribution to the Community made by Chief Inspector Julie Wheatley.
- 6c. TREASURY MANAGEMENT SECOND QUARTER 2081/19 REPORT OF THE SERVICE DIRECTOR - RESOURCES** 57 - 64
 To consider a recommendation made by the Cabinet on 18 December 2018 for Council to note the position of Treasury Management activity as at the end of September 2018.
- 7. COUNCIL TAX REDUCTION SCHEME 2019/20 REPORT OF THE SERVICE DIRECTOR – CUSTOMERS**
 To consider the item referred to Council from the Cabinet (listed as Agenda Item 7.a) and a separate report to Council (listed as Agenda Item 7.b) regarding the Council Tax Reduction Scheme for North Hertfordshire.
- 7a. ITEM REFERRED FROM CABINET - COUNCIL TAX REDUCTION SCHEME** 65 - 78
 To consider recommendations made by the Cabinet on 18 December 2018.
- 7b. REPORT TO COUNCIL - COUNCIL TAX REDUCTION SCHEME 2019/2020** 79 - 232
 For Council to approve the Council Tax Reduction Scheme (CTRS) for North Hertfordshire for 2019/2020.
- 8. CONSTITUTION REVIEW 2019 REPORT OF THE SERVICE DIRECTOR – LEGAL AND COMMUNITY AND MONITORING OFFICER** 233 - 260
 To approve the amendments to the Council's Constitution.
- 9. QUESTIONS FROM MEMBERS**
 To consider any questions submitted by Members of the Council, in accordance with Standing Order 4.8.11 (b).
- 10. NOTICE OF MOTIONS**
 To consider any motions, due notice of which have been given in accordance with Standing Order 4.8.12.

This page is intentionally left blank

**COUNCIL
17 JANUARY 2019**

PUBLIC DOCUMENT

ITEM 6A

TITLE OF REPORT: UPDATED CONTRACT PROCUREMENT RULES FOR 2018/19

Extract from the draft Minutes of the Finance, Audit and Risk meeting held on 17 December 2018

51. UPDATED CONTRACT PROCUREMENT RULES FOR 2018/19

The Legal Commercial Team Manager presented a report of proposed changes to the Contract Procurement Rules which in summary suggested the following amendments:

- Updates to reflect the restructure within the Council and the corresponding changes required in the Constitution;
- To provide a reporting line for potential breaches to line managers/Senior Management Team;
- Introduction of a new subsection to Section 14 to allow for retrospective approval on Single Tenders following certain requirements being met;
- To ensure that Subcontractors are paid within 30 days payment terms;
- Update to Section 29 which provides Service Directors authority to extend contracts up to 12 months to a maximum value of £100,000;
- Provisions on the use of consultants updated in line with audit recommendations.
- Update to Section 22 to establish an approval process for waivers above the EU threshold and a new approval process for waivers below the OJEU threshold.

In considering the proposed amendments to the Contract Procedure Rules it was agreed that 2.4 of the Rules should provide a definitive interpretation of the consequences if an individual did not comply with the Procurement Rules. Although it was accepted that each case should be considered on its own merits there might be contributing factors as to why the breach occurred. Subsequently the Committee agreed to the following wording:

'2.4 Failure to comply with the Rules ~~may~~ will result in Officers conduct being examined and may be a breach under the Council's Managing Misconduct Policy....'

In addition the Committee requested that the Legal Commercial Team Manager consider the following comments and make the changes as considered necessary prior to the Procurement Rules being presented to Council for adoption:

- For ease of reference, that Paragraph 11 'Call-Off Further Competition under a Framework Agreement' and Paragraph 21 'Joining a Framework Agreement' should be amalgamated;
- Reference the proposed new Rules 14.3, 14.8 and 14.9 – suggested that these be located to a more appropriate section with a view that all Rules relating to non compliance could be viewed together;
- Paragraph 4.3 and the term 'appropriate officer' - further clarification of the definition was requested.
- That the views of the Council's Contract Procurement Group be sought regarding the 'Apply Go Local Policy' for contracts of up to £50k. Specifically, if there was a need to review the threshold for the Policy's application.

Having fully considered and debated at length the proposed changes to the Contract Procedure Rules, the Finance, Audit and Risk Committee,

RECOMMENDED TO COUNCIL: the adoption of the Contract Procedure Rules subject to the following amendment:

*'2.4 Failure to comply with the Rules ~~may~~ will result in Officers conduct being examined **and may be a breach** under the Council's Managing Misconduct Policy....'*

REASON FOR DECISION: That the Contract Procurement Rules are part of the Constitution (under Section 20) and are revised and updated periodically as part of the Council's governance and procurement review processes, contributing to effective organisational internal control.

In addition, the review and adoption of the Council's Contract Procurement Rules is a key action in the Council's Procurement Strategy.

**COUNCIL
17 JANUARY 2019**

PUBLIC DOCUMENT

**REPORT PRESENTED TO THE FINANCE AUDIT AND RISK COMMITTEE ON
17 DECEMBER 2018**

TITLE OF REPORT: UPDATED CONTRACT PROCUREMENT RULES FOR 2018/19

REPORT OF THE LEGAL COMMERCIAL TEAM MANAGER

EXECUTIVE MEMBER: LYNDA NEEDHAM

COUNCIL PRIORITY: RESPONSIVE AND EFFICIENT

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

1.1 This report sets out the proposed changes to the Contract Procurement Rules for review and referral that, in summary, seeks to make the following changes:

- Updates to reflect the restructure and corresponding changes in the Constitution;
- Provides a reporting line for potential breaches to line managers/ Senior Management Team
- A new subsection to section 14 which allows for retrospective approval on Single Tenders following certain requirements being met;
- Ensuring that subcontractors are paid within 30 days payment terms;
- Update to section 29 which give Service Directors authority to extend contracts up to 12 months to a maximum value of £100,000;
- Provisions on the use of consultants updated in line with audit recommendations.
- Update to section 22 to establish an approval process for waivers above the EU threshold and a new approval process for waivers below the OJEU threshold.

2. RECOMMENDATIONS

- 2.1 That Committee considers the proposed changes and recommends their adoption to Full Council.

3. REASONS FOR RECOMMENDATIONS

- 3.1 That the Contract Procurement Rules are part of the Constitution (under Section 20) and are revised and updated periodically as part of the Council's governance and procurement review processes, contributing to effective organisational internal control. In addition, the review and adoption of the Council's Contract Procurement Rules is a key action in the Council's Procurement Strategy.

4. ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED

- 4.1 The option of not updating the Contract Procurement Rules would increase the risk of the Council not adhering to the latest procurement legislation and best practise and inconsistencies with the remainder of the Constitution.

5. CONSULTATION WITH RELEVANT MEMBERS AND EXTERNAL ORGANISATIONS

- 5.1 This report and appendices are being presented to FAR Committee for consideration, prior to referral to Council.

6. FORWARD PLAN

- 6.1 This report does not contain a recommendation on a key decision and has not been referred to in the Forward Plan.

7. BACKGROUND

- 7.1 The Contract Procurement Rules are reviewed on a periodic basis to ensure they remain relevant and appropriate to the Council's needs. This review has been conducted by the Contracts & Procurement Group, led by the Legal Commercial Team Manager, Procurement Officer and Service Director - Legal and Community. The Service Director – Resources, who had previous responsibility for this area has reviewed and agreed the proposed changes.

- 7.2 The Rules were last reviewed by Cabinet at its meeting on 22nd November 2016 and recommended to Council for approval of the current version of the Contract Procurement Rules. Full Council approved the current version of the Contract Procurement Rules on 24th November 2016. They were also updated following the Senior Management restructure as per the Delegated Decision taken on 31 May 2018¹, such changes being reported through to Council (and not objected to) on 18 July 2018²

8. RELEVANT CONSIDERATIONS

- 8.1. The revised Contract Procurement Rules (“procurement rules”) are provided at Appendix A, with all proposed changes shown as tracked changes. **In addition, a list of the changes is provided at Appendix B and the rules are referred to with the new numbering.** The very minor changes throughout the procurement rules are not referred to in Appendix B, for example very minor changes for consistency of reference etc. A summary of key changes within this new version are outlined below.

Procurement responsibility and changes:

- 8.2. Since the last revision of the procurement rules, the Service Director – Legal and Community is now responsible for procurement and the Council’s Legal Commercial Team Manager now line manages the Council’s Procurement Officer, as part of that team within Legal Services, with another potential half a contracts lawyer post (currently vacant). The new structure provides a single channel of communication between commissioning officers and the combined legal and procurement service. The procurement rules have been updated to reflect that support and guidance now only needs to be directed to legal services and that future revisions shall be the responsibility of the Service Director – Legal and Community.

Reporting line for potential breaches to line managers/ Senior Management Team (section 2.4):

- 8.3. The reporting line for breaches of the Rules has been set out under this section to provide clarity on the process in the event of an identified breach.

Retrospective approval (section 14):

- 8.4. Retrospective approval has been added to the provisions for Single Tenders. This will allow officers the opportunity to ensure compliance with procurement rules where a genuine oversight, on the rules correct application has been made. The new additions under section 14.3 and 14.8 set out the conditions which must be met in order for retrospective approval to be granted by the Service Directors of Legal and Community and Resources.

¹ [Delegated Decision 31 5 18 on Constitutional Amendments , item 29](#)

² <https://democracy.north-herts.gov.uk/ie/ListDocuments.aspx?CId=136&MIId=2008&Ver=4>

Approval process for waivers above and below EU thresholds (section 22):

- 8.5. The existing Rules do not have an approval process for waivers over the EU threshold and this has now been included. The process to approve waivers below the EU threshold has also been updated to allow approval by statutory officers.

30 days payment terms (section 27):

- 8.6. The Public Contracts Regulations 2015 necessitate that Public sector buyers must pay prime contractors (Tier 1 suppliers) within 30 days and must ensure that their prime contractor includes equivalent 30 day payment terms in any subcontracts through the supply chain. In view of this, an addition to procurement rules, which stipulates contracts with subcontractors shall have a 30 day payment term clause, has been added.

Extension of contracts up to 12 months (section 29):

- 8.7. Currently, Service Directors are authorised to extend contracts by up to a period of 3 months. Consultation with officers undertaking regular contract extensions found this time frame was far too restrictive and short to allow for new contract arrangements to be made. This report seeks an increase from 3 to 12 months, up to a contract value of £100k. The relevant Executive Member shall be authorised to extend contracts for a period over 12 months or over 100k as applicable. In all cases, an extension must be the best value option.

Audit recommendations and consultants (section 31 and section 32):

- 8.8. In line with audit recommendations, the requirements in the procurement rules on the use of consultants, has been strengthened and corporate guidance produced to assist officer responsible for appointing consultants. This area of the procurement rules has been updated to reflect this and to direct officers to the guidance now available.

9. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS

- 9.1 Under section 10.1.5 (g) of the Finance Audit and Risk Committee's terms of reference it has remit "*to maintain an overview of the council's constitution in respect of Contract Procurement Rules consider any major changes and make recommendations to Council for approval*".
- 9.2 Full Council adopts and changes the Constitution and documents such as the Contract Procurement Rules that are part of the Constitution.

- 9.3 The Council must comply with the Public Contracts Regulations 2015 for all procurements above the EU thresholds. Below these thresholds, the procedures to adopt are largely for the authority to decide; the 2015 Regulations introduced some limited controls on procurements below threshold as well as authority for the Cabinet Office to introduce statutory guidance for below threshold procurements.
- 9.4 The overriding principles of transparency, non-discrimination, mutual recognition and equal treatment apply to all procurements, where there is evidence of cross-border interest, irrespective of their value. Having a robust set of Contract Procurement Rules should ensure compliance with these obligations and reduce the risk of successful legal challenge to a procurement exercise.
- 9.5 Section 135 of the Local Government Act 1972 confirms that Councils must make standing orders with respect to the making of contracts. Section 37 of the Local Government Act 2000 confirms that a Council's constitution must contain its standing orders.

10. FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

- 10.1 These are procedural matters that have no direct financial impact upon the Council's revenue or capital budgets.

11. RISK IMPLICATIONS

- 11.1 Adoption of the proposed amendments will contribute to the Council's internal control environment and the management of risk.

12. EQUALITIES IMPLICATIONS

- 12.1 In line with the Public Sector Equality Duty, public bodies must, in the exercise of their functions, give due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination, harassment, victimisation, to advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between those who share a protected characteristic and those who do not.
- 12.3 The Contract Procurement Rules in themselves do not generate equalities implications, however their application when considering specific procurements of goods and services, or works, must take full account of this legislation.

13. SOCIAL VALUE IMPLICATIONS

- 13.1 As the recommendations made in this report do not, in themselves, constitute a public service contract, the measurement of 'social value' as required by the Public Services (Social Value) Act 2012 need not be applied. However, the application of the Contract Procurement Rules must take full account of this requirement when procuring a public service contract within specified parameters as laid out in the Social Value Act. Social Value is one of several factors to be considered when purchasing goods and services, or entering into a works contract.

14. HUMAN RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS

- 14.1 There are no implications, other than confirming that relevant managers will receive training on the updated procurement rules, and the Procurement Officer shall provide updates at relevant team meetings during 2019.

15. APPENDICES

- 15.1 Appendix A – Draft amended Contract Procurement Rules.
15.2 Appendix B - Summary of Changes.

16. CONTACT OFFICERS

Gavin Ramtohal, Contracts and Procurement Solicitor, 01462 474578
Gavin.Ramtohal@north-herts.gov.uk

Jeanette Thompson, Service Director – Legal and Community, 01462 474370
jeanette.thompson@north-herts.gov.uk

Contributors:

Kirstie Wilson, Procurement Officer, 01462 474284
Kirstie.wilson@north-herts.gov.uk

Rachel Cooper, Controls, Risk & Performance Manager, 01462 474606
Rachel.cooper@north-herts.gov.uk

Ian Couper Service Director – Resources 01462 474243
ian.couper@north-herts.gov.uk

Human Resources

HRhelp@north-herts.gov.uk

17. BACKGROUND PAPERS

17.1 None.

APPENDIX A - Draft amended Contract Procurement Rules

See separate document.

Appendix B – Summary of changes

Rule	Description of change
Part 1 flowchart	Contact legal only. This reflects the restructure
Rule 2.4	Reflects Council policy on misconduct and introduces a reporting function for the Monitoring Officer
Rule 2.7	Reflects the restructure
Rule 2.9	Reflects the restructure
Rule 3.1	Cross references the list of exemptions in Rule 3.4
Rule 3.4	Mirrors the exemptions listed in the Contract Procurement Rules 2015. For example, legal representation is exempt under the Regulations in recognition of the need to act quickly to mitigate risk.
Rule 3.8	Reflects the restructure and clarifies that Officers only need to contact legal for both contract and procurement service
Rule 3.9	Reflects the restructure
Rule 4.3	Reflects the requirements of the Council Employee Conflicts of Interest Policy
Rule 4.8	Now includes reference to the Members Gift and Hospitality with regard to the exercise of their functions under the Rules
Rule 4.9	Confirms the process for recording interests in contracts
Rule 4.10	Correct reference to the Whistleblowing policy
Rule 5.1.2	Amended to reflect terminology in the regulations
Rule 5.6	Reflects the restructure
Table A on pages 238 & 239	Reflects the restructure and also makes contract signing more practical. For most of the Council's services, the start dates can not be pushed back if the contract has not been signed. For works contracts, we can usually push back the start date and contract signing mitigate specific risks which we should require before contract start. For example, sealing the contract as a deed provides a 12 year

	limitation period which is helpful due to issues relating to discovery of latent defects. Construction contracts have a higher risk of dispute due to the nature of the works. For works contracts, officers typically require crucial post contract completion documents such as collateral warranties.
Rule 7.2	Reflects the restructure
Rule 7.3	Reflects the restructure
Rule 7.8	Reflects the restructure
Rule 7.12	Reference to decision notice template included
Rule 8.4.2	Pre qualification Questionnaire has been replaced by Selection Questionnaires
Rule 8.5.1	Reflects the restructure
Rule 8.7	Reflects the restructure
Rule 9.3	Reflects the restructure
Rule 10	Pre qualification Questionnaire has been replaced by Selection Questionnaires and to reflect the restructure
Rule 11	Reflects the restructure
Rule 14	Reflects the restructure
Rule 14.3	New process for retrospective approval for single tenders below EU thresholds. The rule contains specific criteria to ensure that statutory officers would apply similar checks and balances to a request prior to award of contract. In the event that a contract is awarded without obtaining approval it is in the interests of the Council to have in place a process that can legitimise the award of contract and protect the Council from challenge.
Rule 14.8	New process for retrospective approval for single tenders above EU thresholds. The rule contains specific criteria to ensure that statutory officers would apply similar checks and balances to a request prior to award of contract. In the event that a contract is awarded without obtaining approval it is in the interests of the Council to have in place a

	process that can legitimise the award of contract and protect the Council from challenge.
Rule 14.9	New reference to the requirement for publishing a decision notice
Rule 15.3	Reflects the restructure
Rule 16.1	Reflects the restructure
Rule 18	Reflects the restructure
Rule 19	Reflects the restructure
Rule 20.2	For consistency with Table A
Rule 20.3	For consistency with Table A. Insertion of a notification process for contracts not able to be signed prior to contract commencement.
Rule 22.2	Introduces an approval process for waivers above the EU threshold with discretion to refer to Cabinet. Currently there is no approval process in place
Rule 22.3	Introduces an approval process at officer level with discretion to refer to Cabinet. This should enable decisions to be made without automatic referral to Cabinet
Rule 27.3	Introduces a payment clause for subcontractors
Rule 28.4	Reflects the restructure
Rule 29.2	Permits a Service Director to approve a contract extension up to 12 months or a maximum value of 100k. Contracts are rarely extended up to 3 months and therefore this rule was not practical. A short term extension to facilitate a retender or make alternative arrangements can be up to 12 months. Consultation with the Service Director – Resources and relevant Executive Member is required as a check and balance to ensure budgetary control

Rule 29.3	Permits the relevant Executive Member to approve a contract extension of more than 12 months or over 100k. Approval of the Service Director – Resources is required in consultation with the Executive Member for IT and Finance. This ensures an appropriate check and balance on budgetary control.
Rule 31.5 to 31.9 Rule 32	<p>These have been deleted as the issues are covered in guidance and moved to section 32 where reporting on project details is more appropriate.</p> <p>In line with audit recommendations, the requirements in the procurement rules on the use of consultants, has been strengthened and corporate guidance produced to assist officer responsible for appointing consultants</p>
Definitions and key contacts	General updating

PART B

SECTION 20

CONTRACT PROCUREMENT RULES

**NORTH HERTFORDSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL
CONTRACT PROCUREMENT RULES**

SECTION 20

1	Flowchart to show tendering options	232230
Part B	Background	233231
2	Introduction	233231
3	Scope	234232
Part C	Procurement Methods.....	235232
4	Introduction	235233
5	Contract values	236234
5	Summary of requirements for Contract Values – Table A.....	238236
6	Estimates – (Below £10k)	241239
7	Quotation (Goods and Services £10k to £100k / Works £50k to £250k)	241239
8	Tenders (Goods and Services above £100k and Works above £250k)	242240
Part D	Tendering Methods.....	244242
9.	Open Tender.....	244242
10.	Restricted Tender	245243
11.	Call-Off Further Competition under a Framework Agreement.....	246244
11A	Dynamic Purchasing System	247245
12.	Competitive Procedure with Negotiation.....	247245
13.	Innovative Partnership procedure.....	247245
14.	Single Tender	247245
15.	Receipt of Quotations / Tenders.....	249247
16.	Opening Quotations and Tenders	250247
17.	Evaluation Criteria for Quotations and Tenders.....	250248
18.	Contract Award	251249
19.	Standstill Period (for EU Threshold only).....	252249
20.	Contracts	252250
21.	Joining a Framework Agreement	253250

Part E	Procurement Issues	253254
22.	Waivers.....	253254
23.	Arithmetic Errors	254252
24.	Post Tender Negotiation	254252
Part F	Specific Rules of Contract	255253
25.	Contractual Terms	255253
26.	Specification	255253
27.	Payment.....	256253
Part G	Ongoing Requirements.....	256254
28.	Variations.....	256254
29.	Extensions	258255
30.	Contract Management.....	258255
Part H	Appointment of Consultants.....	258256
31.	Consultants.....	259256
32.	Project Details.....	260257
Part I	Land Transactions.....	261257
33.	Land Transactions	261257
Part J	Other Information	263260
34.	Glossary of Terms.....	263260
35.	Key Contacts	265262
Part A	Flowchart to Show Tendering Options	230
Part B	Background	231
1	Introduction.....	231
2	Scope	232
Part C	Procurement Methods.....	232
3	Introduction.....	232
4	Contract values.....	234
5	Summary of requirements for Contract Values – Table A.....	236
6	Estimates – Below £10k.....	239
7	Quotation.....	239

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font
Check spelling and grammar

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font
Check spelling and grammar

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font
Check spelling and grammar

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font
Check spelling and grammar

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

8	Tenders (Goods and Services above £100k and Works above £250k)	240
Part D Tendering Methods 242		
9	Open Tender	242
10	Restricted Tender	243
11	Call-Off Further Competition under a Framework Agreement	244
11A	Dynamic Purchasing System	245
12	Competitive Procedure with Negotiation	245
13	Innovative Partnership procedure	245
14	Single Tender	245
15	Receipt of Tenders	247
16	Opening Tenders	247
17	Evaluation Criteria for Quotations and Tenders	247
18	Contract Award	248
19	Standstill Period (for EU Threshold only)	249
20	Contracts	249
21	Joining a Framework Agreement	249
Part E Procurement Issues 250		
22	Waivers	250
23	Arithmetic Errors	251
24	Post Tender Negotiation	251
Part F Specific Rules of Contract 252		
25	Contractual Terms	252
26	Specification	252
27	Payment	253
Part G Ongoing Requirements 253		
28	Variations	253
29	Extensions	254
30	Contract Management	255
Part H Appointment of Consultants 255		
31	Consultants	255

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

Formatted

32.	Project Details.....	256
Part I	Land Transactions.....	257
33.	Land Transactions.....	257
Part J	Other Information.....	259
34.	Glossary of Terms.....	259
35.	Key Contacts.....	261

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font
Check spelling and grammar

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font
Check spelling and grammar

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font
Check spelling and grammar

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font
Check spelling and grammar

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

Formatted: Default Paragraph Font

1 Part A Flowchart to show tendering options

New Contracts

Identify Requirements
 Carry out Risk Assessment with Risk Manager
 Contact ~~Procurement and Legal and Community~~ who will support in
 Estimating Expenditure / Contract Value and selection of
 --- Appropriate Procurement Method [Table A](#) ---
 Are you appointing a consultant? [See Part H](#) then continue
 Is this a land transaction? [See Part I](#) then continue

Goods/ Services Contract Value £0-£5,000

Goods/ Services Contract Value £5,001-£10,000

Goods/ Services Contract Value from £10,001 to £100,000

Goods/services Contract Value £100,001+

Works Contract Value £250,000+ (-for works contracts below 250k see [Table A](#) for requirements)

Get at least one written quote
[Rule 6](#)
 Select Contractor
 Apply [Rule 20](#)

Get at least two written quotes
[Rule 6](#)
 Select Contractor
 Apply [Rule 20](#)

Get at least three written quotes
[Rule 7](#)
 Unless single supplier, then apply [Rule 14](#)

Competitive tenders
[Rule 8](#)
[Table B](#) for method

Table B Methods

Open Tender
[Rule 9](#)
[Rules 15-18](#)
 Apply [Part F](#)

Restricted Tender
[Rule 10](#)
[Rules 15-18](#)
 Apply [Part F](#)

Framework Call-Off
[Rule 11](#)
 Joining Framework [Rule 21](#)
 Apply [Part F](#)

Single Supplier
[Rule 114 – 18](#)
 Apply [Part F](#)

Ongoing Contracts / Problems

Have you spoken to ~~Legal and Community or Procurement~~?

Errors in contractor tenders?
 Apply [Rule 23](#)

Contractor wants to negotiate contract after tender?
 Apply [Rule 24](#)

You need to change the contract terms?
 Apply [Rule 28](#)

You need to extend or renew the contract?
 Apply [Rule 29](#)

Part B Background

4.2 Introduction

4.12.1 These Contract Procurement Rules (the **Rules**) provide a structure for the procurement of works, goods and services. Following them will ensure value for money, propriety and the proper expenditure of public funds. Officers must remember that their budgets are made up of public money and must ensure that they are spent correctly, fairly and transparently.

4.22.2 These Rules have been split into a number of Parts which you must comply with:

- (a) ~~Part C Procurement Methods~~~~Parts C-E~~ **Procurement Methods** – relates to new procurements; and
- (a) ~~Part F Specific Rules of Contract~~
- (b) ~~Part F Specific Rules of Contract~~ – which details the terms and conditions of contract that should apply; and
- (c) ~~Part G Ongoing Requirements~~~~Part G Ongoing Requirements~~ – which details the procedures that must be followed if you need to vary, extend or terminate your contract; and
- (d) ~~Part H Appointment of Consultants~~~~Part H Appointment of Consultants~~ – which details the special procedures that should be followed regarding the appointment of consultants; and
- (e) ~~Part I Land Transactions~~~~Part I Land Transactions~~ – which details the special procedures that should be followed regarding the acquisition or disposal of any interest in land.

4.32.3 Procurement decisions are amongst the most important decisions an Officer will make because the money involved is public money. Efficient use of scarce resources is therefore vital. Equally as important is the Council's reputation, which should be safeguarded from any suspicion of dishonesty or corruption. Officers must ensure that they are able to account for all the actions and decisions they take, and that all processes are transparent and can be audited. Following these Rules will ensure that Officers meet these requirements.

4.42.4 Failure to comply with the Rules ~~will~~**may** result in Officers conduct being examined ~~and may be a breach~~ under the [Council's Managing Misconduct Policy](#). It is a **potential** disciplinary offence to fail to comply with these Rules when letting contracts and employees have a duty to report breaches of these Rules ~~to following the procedures in the Confidential Reporting (the Service Director: Legal and Community, who is also the Council's Monitoring Officer Whistle-blowing) Policy as described in section 3.13 (monitoring.officer@north-herts.gov.uk). The Monitoring Officer will then report the matter to the relevant officer's line manager and the Senior Management Team.~~

4.52.5 The Rules have been adopted in accordance with the requirements of Section 135(2) of the Local Government Act 1972.

4.62.6 The Council's Contracts and Procurement Group is responsible for reviewing and providing guidance on all procurement and contractual matters.

4.72.7 You should ask for advice from ~~Procurement Services and Legal and Community~~, as per the contacts list at the end of these Rules, if any aspect of these rules ~~is~~**are** unclear. You should also seek ~~Procurement and Legal and Community~~**Legal** advice at the indicated stages of any procurement process, and at any other time should you wish to do so.

4.82.8 Officers have a responsibility to read and be familiar with these Rules.

4.92.9 Capitalised words usually have a particular defined meaning which is either explained elsewhere within these rules or else defined in another document. Common contract and procurement defined

Formatted: Block Text, Left, Right: -0.2 cm, Space After: 6 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 4 + Numbering Style: a, b, c, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0.5 cm, Tab after: 1.75 cm + Indent at: 1.75 cm, Tab stops: -2.25 cm, Left + -0.2 cm, Left + 1.75 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt, Font color: Auto

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

Formatted: Font: (Default) Arial, 11 pt, Font color: Black

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

words are defined in the Contract Procurement Rules Jargon Busting Guide. Please contact [Procurement or Legal and Community](#) if the meaning of any of these Rules is unclear.

~~4.102.10~~ In these Rules, unless otherwise stated, references to a Service Director are to the Service Director of the department responsible for the contract in question or such senior officer of that department to whom the Service Director has delegated in writing the powers in question.

23 Scope

~~2.13.1~~ These Rules apply to all contracts for works or the supply of goods or services to North Hertfordshire District Council save as set out in rule 3.4. and any Trading Accounts.

~~2.23.2~~ You must not enter into any contract until all necessary approvals, sanctions and consents have been obtained and ensured these Rules have been followed.

~~2.33.3~~ No tender or quotation may be accepted unless the necessary approval, sanction and consent have been obtained.

~~2.43.4~~ These Rules apply to all contracts with third parties and all sub-contracts where the Council nominates a sub-contractor or supplier, or where we appoint a consultant (refer to Part H) to act on behalf of the Council. They also apply, in appropriate circumstances, to the sale of assets, goods or services by the Council. They do not apply to:

- contracts of employment
- purchases made at public auction
- ~~contracts with other local authorities or Central Government (this can refer to collaborative working such as consortia arrangements, where the Procurement rules of the lead authority apply):~~
- contracts which are exempt under the Public Contracts Regulations 2015

~~2.53.5~~ There are particular requirements in relation to the appointment of consultants, (Part H Appointment of Consultants~~Part H Appointment of Consultants~~) and transactions involving land, (Part I Land Transactions~~Part I Land Transactions~~).

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

~~2.63.6~~ These Rules are made up of two intersecting sets of rules: EU and UK public procurement law; and competition law; and the Council Constitution. The Council Constitution applies to procurements of any value and has four levels depending on the Contract Value. EU and UK public procurement law applies in addition to the Council Constitution in relation to procurements above the EU Threshold.

~~2.73.7~~ The principles of the Public Services (Social Value) Act 2012, will be applied to all relevant procurement and contract management required by the legislation and in any event will be applied to all procurement contracts above the EU threshold including capital works and goods supply. Additionally a “go local” policy applies to all contracts valued below £50,000, to first attempt to locate those goods, services or works from a supplier located within the North Herts District Council geographical area. Advice on these policies and the toolkits available to assist you should be sought from Legal the relevant officer.⁴

~~2.83.8~~ These Rules will be reviewed regularly. Responsibility for this lies with the Service Director: Resources and the Service Director: Legal and Community (or relevant delegated officer) in consultation with the Contracts and Procurement Group. The Legal and Community Directorate includes both Legal and Procurement Officers.

⁴ ~~New paragraph 2.7 following delegated decision of Monitoring Officer – Record of decision 12.08.15.~~
CPR Full Council approved version XX 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18 operative 1.6.18

~~2.93.9~~ These Rules do not apply to Concession Contracts (see *Glossary of Terms in section 34*). For Concession Contracts equal to or greater than the sum specified in Article 8(1) of the Concessions Directive, please follow the processes set out in the Concession Contracts Regulations 2016. Seek advice from Legal ~~and Community and Procurement~~.

Part C Procurement Methods

34 Introduction

~~3.14.1~~ The nature of the Council's activities often calls for a close working relationship with commercial organisations and without making any implication of improper conduct by either Officers or contractors, it is in your interests to ensure that there cannot even be a suspicion of a conflict of interest.

~~3.24.2~~ This Rule is of particular importance to staff who are in close contact with commercial firms seeking the opportunity to tender for the Council's services. It is important that the actions of such staff should be manifestly above suspicion of bias in favour of a particular firm and every care must be taken not to disclose 'in confidence' information e.g. tender prices.

~~Personal~~private Interests

~~3.34.3~~ No contract may be awarded to an Officer of the Council, or to any partnership of which they, or any member of their family are a member (except for a corporation in which they are a shareholder) or to any company of which they or any member of their family are a director unless a relevant conflict of interest form has been completed and authorisation obtained from the officer's Appropriate Officer² the Chief Executive has given permission for the award of the contract to proceed.

~~3.4~~ In such a case the officer must disclose the full measure of their interest in the contract to their Service Director who will notify the Chief Executive.

~~3.5~~ No Officer may accept a directorship in any company unless approved under the Employee Conflicts of Interest Policy, without the express permission of the Chief Executive. –Permission should be sought from their Appropriate Officer, as detailed in the Employee Conflicts of Interest Policy³ through their Service Director who will make a submission to the Chief Executive.

~~3.6~~ Any member of staff who comes into official contact with any matter concerning a business organisation in which they or a member of their family have an interest must disclose this interest to their Service Director and ask that some other Officer deals with the matter.

~~3.74.4~~ All Officers are expected to be aware of and comply with the requirements of the Council's policy ~~on~~ Conflicts of Interest.

~~3.84.5~~ The exception to this rule is if two Officers of the Council put in an expression of interest to supply a service through the Community Right of Challenge Act 2012. Information on this Community Right is available on the Council's website from the Service Director: Legal and Community⁴. Any Officers that have put in an expression of interest cannot take part in the tendering process from a Council perspective, e.g. they cannot participate in tender evaluation.

Prevention of Corruption

~~3.94.6~~ All contracts should ensure that suppliers are under a contractual obligation to adhere to the requirements of the Bribery Act 2010 and the Councils' requirements as set out in the Councils' Anti – Bribery Policy.

² Officers to review Conflicts of Interest Policy and complete form 3 : <http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/about-me/hr-policies/conflicts-interest>

³ Ibid

⁴ <https://www.north-herts.gov.uk/home/community/community-right-challenge>

CPR Full Council approved version XX 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18 operative 1.6.18

3.104.7 No Officer may purchase goods from or use the services of a contractor on preferential terms for private purposes if these terms are given either directly or indirectly because of the potential or actual contractual or other official business relationship between the contractor and the Council.

Hospitality

3.114.8 The utmost discretion must be exercised if offers of hospitality, gifts etc. are received from contractors with whom staff deal in the course of their official duties. Dealings must be kept strictly on a business footing and the highest standard of watchfulness and integrity must be maintained at all times. See also the Council [Employee Gift's and Hospitality Policy](#):

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/human-resources/hr-policies/gifts-and-hospitality>
<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/about-me/hr-policies/gifts-and-hospitality>

[Councillors who exercise their functions under these rules are also obliged to following their Code of Conduct, the NHDC Member Protocol for Gifts & Hospitality and declare any relevant interests⁵.](#)

Record of Interests

3.124.9 ~~All interests in contracts must also be declared in writing in register (Interests in Contracts form 3) held by the The Service Director: Legal and Community and all interests registered are open to inspection by members and the public: shall record in a book to be kept for the purpose, particulars of any notice given by an officer of a pecuniary interest in a contract. During office hours any Member of the Council may inspect the book. See also the Council Conflicts of Interest Policy:~~

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/human-resources/hr-policies/conflicts-interest>
<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/about-me/hr-policies/conflicts-interest>

Whistleblowing

3.134.10 ~~3.13~~When a Member, employee or a contractor raises concerns about the activities of the Council which are ethically questionable, this is known as whistle-blowing and is covered by the Councils' "~~Confidential Reporting~~Whistleblowing Policy". The ~~p~~Policy applies to all employees and those contractors working for the Council on Council premises, for example, agency staff. It also covers suppliers and those providing services under a contract with the Council on their own premises. Further information is available at:

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/corporate-governance/whistleblowing-policy>

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/corporate-governance/whistleblowing-policy>

45 Contract values

4.15.1 The estimated annual and total aggregate values of any contract (whether for works, goods or services – see below and Table A) should be established prior to going to the market and should be recorded in writing.

The aggregate value of any contract is calculated on the basis of the total value of the consideration including any options for extensions or renewals (usually the cost payable but may include any benefit in kind or other benefit to the contractor) estimated to be payable over the entire contract period. Where the contract provides for an option to renew or extend, then the estimate should be based on the assumption that the option is exercised.

⁵ <https://www.north-herts.gov.uk/home/council-and-democracy/councillors/councillors-code-conduct-and-declaration-interests>
CPR Full Council approved version [XX 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18 operative 1.6.18](#)

Some contracts might be indefinite in length. In relation to services, the value shall be the total expenditure incurred over a four year period. In relation to supply of goods the value shall be the total expenditure incurred over a twelve month period. Note works contracts cannot be indefinite as they end when the works are complete.

4.1.15.1.1 The aggregate value of any works contract shall include not only the value of the works themselves over the entire estimated length but also all the related services, equipment and materials which the contractor will be expected to provide under the contract, so it is vital that the specification of the contract is comprehensive. ~~If other contractors are providing separate services, i.e. Quantity Surveyors or Architecture Consultancy in relation to works contracts, these are not included and are treated as separate contracts to the main contract.~~

4.1.25.1.2 (a) "Works Contract" means a contract ~~which has as its objecter carries out a significant amount of~~ construction, demolition of buildings, civil engineering, earthworks and associated requirements such as re-roofing, re-surfacing, design services etc.

(b) "Services Contract" means a contract ~~which has as its object or provides~~ a service of some sort, e.g. courier services, street cleansing, training etc. ~~This may involve providing some goods, e.g. a report or refuse bins, but most of the work involves doing something for the Council other than "Works".~~

(c) "Goods Contract" means a contract ~~which has as its object the supply of or provides~~ some tangible items e.g. photocopiers, refuse bins, consumables etc. ~~without significant services e.g. provision of photocopier paper.~~

(d) "Consultancy Services" (see Part H) means a contractor ~~to who~~ provides specialist advice or support to the Council. This does not cover training providers.

4.25.2 The estimate is in Pounds Sterling exclusive of Value Added Tax. This value does not include any saving to the Council. This estimate is the **Contract Value**.

4.35.3 Contract Values must not be artificially under or over estimated or divided where the effect is to avoid the Rules.

4.45.4 The Contract Value determines which of the four levels of the Rules are applicable. However, if the preliminary estimate is within 10% of a higher category value, then the provisions for the higher level should be applied. This allows for any potential overspend on the Contract which would otherwise have meant that the final value of the contract was above the threshold for the type of procurement used.

4.55.5 In all cases a procedure applicable to a higher value contract may be used if it is considered to be in the Council's best interests or is considered to be best practice.

4.65.6 If there is any conflict or if it is unclear which procedure should apply, you should as a default method, apply the rules as if your procurement was a tender, i.e. Rule 8 (Tender). Please ask ~~the Procurement Officer of~~ Legal and Community for advice.

4.75.7 If there is an intention to use indices for calculating any contract uplift, please ask Finance ~~and~~ (Resources Directorate) Services for advice.

5 Summary of requirements for Contract Values – Table A

PROCUREMENT – TABLE OF REQUIREMENTS – GOODS AND SERVICES					
UNDER 5K	£5K-£10K	£10K - £50K	£50K - £100K	£100K - EUeu	EU PROCUREMENTS
1 Quote	2 Quotes	3 Quotes	Open Advert	Open Advert	Restricted, Open or Negotiated Process
Apply Go Local Policy	Apply Go Local Policy	Apply Go Local Policy	-	-	-
-	Keep records of offers invited, method of inviting offers, basis of selecting contractors, staff authorised to accept offers, correspondence with suppliers.	- Discussion with Procurement, Legal before starting procurement	Discussion with Procurement, Legal before starting procurement-	- Initial procurement meeting held with Procurement, Legal before starting the procurement	Initial procurement meeting held with Procurement, Legal before starting the procurement -
-	-	Standard Quotation Documents	Standard Quotation Documents	Standard Tender Documents	Standard Tender Documents
-	-	Must use e - Tendering	Must use e- Tendering	Must use e- Tendering	Must use e - Tendering
-	-	-	Carry out Risk Assessment	Carry out Risk Assessment	Carry out Risk Assessment
-	-	-	Consider Social Value	-Consider Social Value	Must consider Social Value
-	-	-	Standard decision letter templates	Standard decision letter templates.	Standard decision letter templates
-	-	-	-	Detailed Feedback	Detailed Feedback
-	-	-	-	Observe 10 day Standstill	Observe 10 day Standstill.
-	-	-	Standard Award letters.	Standard Award letters.	Standard Award letters.
-	-	-	Contracts must be completed and signed by both parties prior to any works commencing; where practical. Where this is unlikely to take place, notification should be provided to the Service Director: Legal and Community prior to the start date with a plan to achieve contract signing.	Contracts must be completed and signed by both parties prior to commencement any works commencing where practical. Where this is unlikely to take place, notification should be provided to the Service Director: Legal and Community prior to the start date with a plan to achieve contract signing. any works commencing. Consider if contract should be sealed as a deed.	Contracts must be completed and signed by both parties prior to any works commencing commencement where practical. Where this is unlikely to take place, notification should be provided to the Service Director: Legal and Community prior to the start date with a plan to achieve contract signing. Consider if contract should be sealed as a deed.
-	-	-	Must complete Decision Notice	Must complete Decision notice	Must complete Decision Notice

-	Must provide details for Contract Register.	Must provide details for Contract Register	Must provide details for Contract Register.	Must provide details for Contract Register.	Must provide details for Contract Register.
-	-	-	Must post award notice within 30 days of Contract Award.	Must post award notice within 30 days of Contract Award.	Must post award notice within 30 days of Contract Award.
-	-	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.

PROCUREMENT – TABLE OF REQUIREMENTS – WORKS

EMERGENCY UP TO £2.5K	UNDER £10k	£10K - £50K	£50K - £250K	£250K - EU	EU PROCUREMENTS
1 Verbal Quote	1 Written Quote	3 Quotes	3 Quotes	Restricted Process or Open Advert	Restricted, Open or Negotiated Process
Apply Go Local Policy	Apply Go Local Policy	Apply Go Local Policy	-	-	-
-	Must keep records of offers invited, method of inviting offers, basis of selecting contractors, staff authorised to accept offers, correspondence with suppliers.	Must keep records of suppliers invited, method of inviting offers, basis of selecting contractors, staff authorised to accept offers, correspondence with suppliers, evaluation record sheets.	- Discussion with Procurement, Legal before starting procurement	Initial procurement meeting held with Procurement, Legal before starting the procurement.	Initial procurement meeting held with Procurement, Legal before starting the procurement.
-	-	Standard Quotation Documents	Standard Quotation Documents	Standard Tender Documents	Standard Tender Documents
-	-	Consider e - Tendering	Must use e- Tendering	Must use e- Tendering	Must use e - Tendering
-	-	-	Carry out Risk Assessment	Carry out Risk Assessment	Carry out Risk Assessment
-	-	-	Consider Social Value	Consider Social Value	Must consider Social Value
-	-	-	Standard decision letter templates	Standard decision letter templates.	Standard decision letter templates
-	-	-	-	Detailed Feedback	Detailed Feedback
-	-	-	-	Observe 10 day Standstill	Observe 10 day Standstill.
-	-	-	Standard Award letters.	Standard Award letters.	Standard Award letters.
-	-	-	Contracts must be completed and signed by both parties prior to any works commencing. Where this is unlikely to take	Contracts must be completed and signed by both parties prior to any works commencing. Where this is unlikely to take place, notification and a waiver	Contracts must be completed and signed by both parties prior to any works commencing. Where this is unlikely to take place, notification and a waiver should be provided to

Page 27

				place, notification and a waiver should be provided to the Service Director: Legal and Community prior to the start date with- a plan to achieve contract signing.	should be provided to the Service Director: Legal and Community prior to the start date with a plan to achieve contract signing Consider if contract should be sealed as a deed.	the Service Director: Legal and Community prior to the start date with- a plan to achieve contract signing. Consider if contract should be sealed as a deed.
-	-	-	-	Must complete Decision Notice	Must complete Decision notice	Must complete Decision Notice
-	Must provide details for Contract Register.	Must provide details for Contract Register	Must provide details for Contract Register	Must provide details for Contract Register	Must provide details for Contract Register	Must provide details for Contract Register
-	-	-	Must post award notice within 30 days of Contract Award.	Must post award notice within 30 days of Contract Award.	Must post award notice within 30 days of Contract Award.	Must post award notice within 30 days of Contract Award.
-	-	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.	Must consider setting up Google alerts/ Creditsafe alerts.

6 Estimates – (Below £10,000k)

- 6.1 Service Directors must ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place within their Directorate to ensure value for money.
- 6.2 The Council has adopted a Go Local Policy for all procurements below £50,000k. Officers should always seek to obtain local quotes where available. A record should be kept of the decision making process, as this may be required for audit purposes.. (See Glossary of Terms for description of Go Local and link to Cabinet report)
- 6.3 Officers should demonstrate that value for money has been obtained and should maintain records accordingly, in line with the Document Retention Schedule.
- 6.3.1 Such records should contain, as a minimum:
- (a) the number of estimates or offers invited; and
 - (b) the method of inviting estimates or offers; and
 - (c) the basis of selecting suppliers/contractors; and
 - (d) the staff authorised to accept estimates or offers.
- 6.4 Official Purchase Orders must be raised through the Council's electronic ordering system in accordance with Financial Regulations.
- 6.5 You must follow Rule 20 (Contracts).

7 Quotation (Goods and Services £10,000k to £100,000k / Works £150,000k to £250,000k)

7.1 All Quotations should take place using the Council's E – Tendering system. Contact Procurement for assistance.

7.2 Prior to starting your quotation you should contact Legal to discuss you planned procurement.

7.1

7.27.3 Once a quotation process has started, there must be no contact with any of the bidders unless it is through a clarification process. Clarification questions usually relate to the contract or the specification and responses are time sensitive. Clarification responses are the responsibility of the Project Manager and Legal ~~and Community~~.

7.4 Service Directors must ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place within their Directorate to ensure value for money, that any selection process used is fair and equitable, and that no positive or negative favouritism is shown to any contractor.

7.37.5 Please see Table A under Rule 5 for contract notice requirements. In addition, the project manager may also place an advert in a trade publication (please be aware that some publications charge for adverts).

7.6 You must have a specification of requirements. -See ~~9~~

7.47.7 Part F Specific Rules of Contract ~~Part F~~ Specific Rules of Contract, in particular Rule 26 (Specification).

7.4.47.7.1 You must not change the specification after requesting quotations.

Formatted: Block Text, Left, Right: -0.2 cm, Space After: 0 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm Tab after: 1.25 cm + Indent at: 1.1 cm, Tab stops: -0.16 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

7.57.8 You must follow the procedures in Rule 17 (Evaluation Criteria for Quotations and Tenders).

7.5-17.8.1 You must not change the scoring method after requesting quotations.

7.67.9 You may approach only a single supplier if the conditions in Rule 14 (~~Single Tender~~~~Single Tender~~) are met. This process may only be used where there are compelling reasons for it being required and must not be applied solely because it is convenient to do so. Otherwise you should invite a minimum of three formal quotations. (Please check with ~~Procurement and Legal and Community~~~~Legal~~ before proceeding).

Formatted: Font color: Black

7.6-17.9.1 Where you can demonstrate that there are insufficient suitably qualified contractors or suppliers to meet the requirements for a minimum of three quotations, both suitably qualified candidates must be invited and this approach agreed under Rule 22 (Waivers).

7.6-27.9.2 At least two satisfactory responses (i.e. responses which meet a minimum quality standard under which the Council could award the contract) must be received. If the Council receives only one satisfactory response, the Officer must obtain an additional quote or tender or obtain a waiver under Rule 22 (Waivers).

7.77.10 You must follow the procedures outlined in:

- (a) Rule 15 (~~Receipt of Quotations / Tenders~~~~Receipt of Quotations / Tenders~~); and
- (b) Rule 16 (~~Opening Quotations and Tenders~~~~Opening Quotations and Tenders~~); and
- (c) Rule 20 (Contracts).

7.87.11 The Council has adopted a Go Local Policy for all procurements below £50,000k. Officers should always seek to obtain local quotes where available. A record should be kept of the decision making process, as this may be required for audit purposes. (See the Glossary of Terms for a description of Go Local and link to Cabinet Report).

7.97.12 For Contracts over £25,000k you must post an award notice to Contract Finder using the Councils E-Tendering system, even if the procurement was not advertised. This is a Government requirement for Transparency purposes.

7.107.13 For contracts above £50,000k you must publish an official NHDC Decision Notice on the Councils' website. ~~The Decision Notice template~~ ~~Templates are is~~ available on the ~~Procurement resource~~ ~~following~~ pages on the Intranet.

~~<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/procurement/standard-procurement-templates>~~~~<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/doing-business/procurement/standard-procurement-templates>~~

8 Tenders (Goods and Services above £100,000k and Works above £250,000k)

8.1 Service Directors must ensure that appropriate mechanisms are in place within their Directorate to ensure value for money, that any selection process used is fair and equitable, and that no positive or negative favouritism is shown to any contractor.

8.2 [Prior to starting your quotation you should contact Legal to discuss you planned procurement.](#)

8.3 You must have a specification of requirements. See —▲

8.18.4 ~~Part F Specific Rules of Contract~~~~Part F Specific Rules of Contract~~, in particular Rule 26 (Specification).

Formatted: Block Text, Left, Right: -0.2 cm, Space After: 0 pt, Outline numbered + Level: 2 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3, ... + Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left + Aligned at: 0 cm Tab after: 1.25 cm + Indent at: 1.25 cm, Tab stops: -0.16 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

~~8.1.18.4.1~~ It is important that all documentation and specifications are completed before proceeding to advert. If this is not done in the initial stages, officers may find that they have placed themselves under unnecessary pressure to meet the timescales they have set. In addition, please ensure that all Project meetings (e.g. evaluation and moderation) are timetabled well in advance to ensure resource availability at key points, and no diary clashes).

~~8.1.28.4.2~~ For all procurements which require Member input, you must consult on the specification with the Executive Member prior to going out to quotation or tender.

~~8.1.38.4.3~~ You must not change the specification once the Invitation to Tender (ITT) has been sent to interested bidders.

~~8.28.5~~ You must follow the procedures in Rule 17 (Evaluation Criteria for Quotations and Tenders).

~~8.2.18.5.1~~ For all procurements which require Executive Member input, you must consult on the scoring method with the Executive Member prior to going out to quotation or tender.

~~8.2.28.5.2~~ You must not change the scoring method once ~~Pre Qualification Questionnaires (PQQ) Selection Questionnaire~~ or Invitations to Tender (ITT) have been sent to interested bidders.

~~8.6~~ You must have a contract prepared in advance in a form approved by the Service Director: Legal and Community. See ~~→~~

~~8.38.7~~ ~~Part F Specific Rules of Contract~~ ~~Part F Specific Rules of Contract~~.

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

~~8.3.18.7.1~~ Contact Legal ~~and Community~~ for advice if you need to negotiate or amend the contract during the tender process.

~~8.48.8~~ If you are unable, or if your Service Director decides that it is not feasible to meet these requirements you must obtain a waiver under Rule 22 (~~Waivers~~ ~~Waivers~~).

Formatted: Font color: Black

Tendering Options

~~8.58.9~~ Service Directors should select one of the tendering methods described in Table B. Alternative methods of tendering may be used with approval of Cabinet in advance. Contact ~~Procurement and Legal and Community~~ ~~Legal~~ for advice.

Table B

<u>Tender Option</u>	<u>Description</u>
Open tender Rule 9	This process should be used when there are only a small number of suppliers competing for the business. There is no pre-qualification. Any interested supplier may tender.
Restricted tender Rule 10	This process should be used if there are a large number of suppliers competing for the business. It can only be used for above OJEU procurements. Suppliers are pre-qualified as to their suitability as contracting partners. They are assessed as to whether they have the capability to provide the works, goods or services. Qualified suppliers are invited to tender and are assessed as to how they will provide works, goods or services.
Framework Agreement Rule 11	This process may be used if we are named or named via a link (e.g. Supply Herts) as a member of an appropriate Framework Agreement, or if it is an Open Framework. The

	procedure is that defined by the Framework Agreement but generally invites supplier members to tender prices against a specification. There is not normally any negotiation on terms or conditions.
Competitive procedure with Negotiation and Competitive Dialogue Rule 12	These processes can be used when it is not possible to adapt readily available solutions or design / innovation may be required. Rules 29 and 30 of the Public Contract Regulations set out the requirements.
Innovation Partnership Rule 13	These processes can be used when it is not possible to adapt readily available solutions or design / innovation may be required. Rule 31 of the Public Contract Regulations sets out the requirements
Single tender Rule 14	You approach only a single supplier for their tender. This process may only be used where there are compelling reasons for it being required and must not be applied solely because it is convenient to do so. (Contact Procurement and Legal and Community Legal for advice)

Part D Tendering Methods

Rule 40 of The Public Contract Regulations 2015 expressly allows opportunities for Pre Tender market consultation. Please consult with Legal and Community and Procurement on its use as the rules must be carefully followed.

9. Open Tender

Once a tender process has started, there must be no contact with any of the bidders unless it is through a clarification process. Clarification questions usually relate to the contract or the specification and responses are time sensitive. Clarification responses are the responsibility of the Project Manager and Legal and Community, although please keep Procurement Services informed of progress.

9.1 All adverts and contract award notices must be published as per Table A requirements.

9.1.1 See Rule 34 (Glossary of Terms) for the meaning of "EU Threshold" and "OJEU".

Invitation to Tender (ITT)

9.2 The Council has a standard ITT template which will be tailored for each procurement. Please contact Legal and Community for the current version.

9.2.1 The ITT is a document that details the goods or services we require, in sufficient detail for the interested contractors to give us an accurate quotation of price and how they will meet our minimum expected service levels. The ITT incorporates the form of contract that we intend to contract under, as well as the detailed specification which is probably the most important element. The ITT for every specific procurement must be "owned" by the Project or Service Manager leading the procurement exercise. See also Rules 23 (eContractual Terms) and 24 (Specification).

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18-operative 1.6.18

9.3 You must send all interested suppliers a copy of the ITT. You should seek advice from Legal ~~and Community~~ in creating your ITT. Your ITT should contain questions that assess the supplier's ability to provide the services and their suitability to be contracting partners to the Council. This is done by assessing (where relevant):

- a) the suppliers ability to perform their obligations against the specification; and
- b) financial standing; and
- c) technical standards; and
- d) insurance; and
- e) health and safety; and
- f) environmental and economic (e.g. employment) factors; and
- g) social value, and
- h) compliance with any other relevant statutory obligation; (including equalities) and
- i) references.

9.4 You must follow the procedures outlined in:

- a) Rule 15 (~~Receipt of Quotations / Tenders~~Receipt of Quotations / Tenders); and
- b) Rule 16 (~~Opening Quotations and Tenders~~Opening Quotations and Tenders); and
- c) Rule 17 (Evaluation Criteria for Quotations and Tenders); and
- d) Rule 18 (~~Contract Award~~Contract Award); and
- e) Rule 19 (Standstill Period) it is highly recommended that this is observed for all tenders unless timescales are prohibitive.

Formatted: Font color: Black

Formatted: Font color: Black

10. Restricted Tender

Once a tender process has started, there must be no contact with any of the bidders unless it is through a clarification process. Clarification questions usually relate to the contract or the specification and responses are time sensitive. Clarification responses are the responsibility of the Project Manager and Legal ~~and Community, although please keep Procurement Services informed of progress.~~

10.1.1 All adverts and contract award notices must be published as per the requirements in Table A.

10.2 The restricted tender procedure splits the procurement process into two stages: the ~~PQQ SSQ~~ and then the ITT. **This process can only be used for procurements above the OJEU threshold for services.**

10.2.1 See Rule 34 (Glossary of Terms) for the meaning of "~~PQQSSQ~~" and "ITT".

~~Pre-Qualification Standard Selection Questionnaire (PQQSSQ)~~

10.3 You should use the approved starting point ~~PQQ SSQ~~. Contact Legal and Community for the current version.

10.4 You must send all interested suppliers a copy of the ~~PQQ SSQ~~. You should seek advice from Legal and Community when creating your ~~PQQ SSQ~~.

10.5 The ~~PQQ SSQ~~ stage involves assessing the general capability of a company as a contracting party to provide the services. This is done by assessing:

- a) financial standing; and

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18-operative 1.6.18

- b) technical standards; and
- c) environmental and economic (e.g. employment) factors; and
- d) compliance with any other relevant statutory obligation; and
- e) references; and
- f) and other matters that do not relate to the quality of their services, just their ability to provide the service.
- g) The following may be assessed at [PQQ-SSQ](#) or ITT stage – Social Value and Equalities impacts.

10.6 This assessment is designed to fail those companies that we could not contract with and allow to ITT all companies we could contract with.

10.7 It is important not to assess aspects of quality at [PQQ-SSQ](#) otherwise you cannot ask the same question at ITT. A supplier's quality of service should only be assessed by their tender (following ITT).

~~10.8~~ The process for selecting and short listing contractors must be transparent, fair and auditable.

~~10.9~~10.8

Invitation to Tender (ITT)

~~10.10~~10.9 You should use the approved starting point ITT. Contact Legal ~~and Community~~ for the current version.

~~10.11~~10.9.1 The ITT is a document that details the goods or services we require in sufficient detail for the interested contractors to give us an accurate quotation of price and how they will meet our minimum expected service levels. The ITT incorporates the form of contract that we intend to contract under as well as the detailed specification which is probably the most important element. The Evaluation Criteria must also be included in this document. See also Rules 25 (Contractual Terms) and 26 (Specification).

~~10.12~~10.10 You must send all short listed suppliers a copy of the ITT. You should seek advice from Legal ~~and Community~~ when creating your ITT.

~~10.13~~10.11 Your ITT should contain questions that assess the supplier's ability to provide the services and their suitability to be contracting partners to the Council. -This is done by assessing the supplier's ability to perform their obligations against the specification. -You should not include any question you have assessed in your [PQQ-SSQ](#).

~~10.14~~10.12 You must follow the procedures outlined in:

- a) Rule 15 (Receipt of Quotations / Tenders); and
- b) Rule 16 ([Opening Quotations and Tenders](#)~~Opening Quotations and Tenders~~); and
- c) Rule 17 (Evaluation of Quotations / Tenders); and
- d) Rule 18 (Contract Award); and
- e) Rule 19 (Standstill Period) - it is highly recommended that this is observed for all tenders unless timescales are prohibitive.

11. Call-Off Further Competition under a Framework Agreement

- 11.1 The full tendering procedures within the Rules will not apply to a contract ~~where Legal-it for which the Service Director responsible, in consultation with the Service Director: Resources, agrees it advises it~~ is appropriate to purchase from suppliers through an approved external Framework Agreement.
- 11.2 See Rule 34 (~~Glossary of Terms~~[Glossary of Terms](#)) for the meaning of "Framework Agreement".
- 11.3 This Rule only applies if the Council is already named or named via a link (e.g. Supply Herts) unless using a consortium framework. i.e. ESPO (Eastern Shires Purchasing Organisation) or it is an Open Framework. ~~If there is no appropriate Framework Agreement in place see Rule 21 (Joining a Framework Agreement~~[Joining a Framework Agreement](#)~~).~~
- 11.4 Each Framework Agreement has its own procedures in relation to purchasing from a Supplier under the agreement. ~~These must be followed exactly. See Procurement and Legal and Community Legal for advice. These procedures may be quicker and more straightforward than full procurements. As with all Frameworks, it is important to consider whether it provides the best Value for Money outcome.~~

Formatted: Font color: Black

Formatted: Font color: Black

11A Dynamic Purchasing System

- 11A.1 The tendering procedures ~~within these~~[se](#) Rules will not apply to a contract ~~for which the Service Director responsible, if Legal advises in consultation with the Service Director: Resources, agrees it~~ is appropriate to purchase from suppliers through a Dynamic Purchasing System.
- 11A.2 See Rule 34 (Glossary of Terms) for the meaning of "Dynamic Purchasing System"
- 11A.3 Dynamic Purchasing Systems ("DPS") can provide all the benefits of a Framework Agreement but are more flexible. The key benefits compared to a Framework Agreement are no limits on duration and suppliers can join and leave at any time.
- 11A.4 A DPS is generally appropriate for purchasing simple and commoditised goods. Please seek advice from [Procurement and Legal and Community Legal](#).

12. Competitive Procedure with Negotiation

- 12.1 All adverts and contract award notices must be published as per the requirements in Table A
- 12.2 The Competitive Procedure with Negotiation splits the procurement process into initial receipt of ITTs, a negotiation stage and final submission of bids from Suppliers.
- 12.3 Competitive Procedure with Negotiation is subject to detailed rules and Legal and Community must be consulted if this option is selected.
- 12.4 As in 8.6 the approval of Cabinet must be obtained in advance if this method is selected.

13. Innovative Partnership procedure.

- 13.1 All adverts and contract award notices must be published as per the requirements in Table A
- 13.2 This procedure may only be used where it has been identified that there is a need for innovative goods, services or works which cannot be met by the existing market.
- 13.3 The Innovative Partnership procedure is subject to detailed rules, and Legal and Community must be consulted if this option is selected.

13.4 As in 8.6 the approval of Cabinet must be obtained in advance if this method is selected.

14. Single Tender

Please liaise with ~~Procurement and Legal and Community~~Legal in the first instance, as pre-authorisation for this approach is required as per Rule 14.2.

Below EU Threshold

14.1 A single tender may be obtained when:

- a) Prices are wholly controlled by trade organisations or government order and no reasonably satisfactory alternative is available; or
- b) The works, goods, or services to be supplied consist of repairs to or the supply of parts or upgrading of existing proprietary machinery, equipment, software, hardware or plant and the repairs or the supply cannot be carried out practicably by alternative contractors; or
- c) Specialist consultants, suppliers, agents or professional advisors are required and:
 - (i) Evidence that there is no satisfactory alternative; or
 - (ii) evidence indicates that there is likely to be no genuine competition; or
 - (iii) it is in the Council's best interest to engage a particular consultant, supplier, agent or advisor; (Contact ~~Procurement and Legal and Community~~Legal for advice) or
- d) Products are sold at a fixed price and market conditions make genuine competition impossible.

14.2 You must have prior written approval of the Service Director responsible, the Service Director: Legal and Community and the Service Director: Resources. Contact Legal ~~and Community or Procurement~~ for advice on preparing your Single Tender Option report.

14.3 In the event that approval has not been obtained for a single tender in accordance with section 14.2, and a contract has been awarded, the Service Director: Resources and the Service Director: Legal and Community may grant retrospective approval provided the following conditions are met:

- (i) Expenditure is within approved budgets or overspend has been reported
- (ii) Contract award was approved under Section 14 of the Council's Constitution (Responsibility for Functions)
- (iii) The Service Director: Resources and the Service Director: Legal and Community are satisfied that an application for a single tender would have been approved under section 14.2.
- (iv) The commissioning officer completes an application for retrospective approval to the Service Director: Resources and the Service Director: Legal and Community.

Above EU Threshold

Please liaise with Legal and Community and Procurement in the first instance.

~~14.2~~14.4 A single tender may only be obtained if:

- a) No tenders or no appropriate tenders were received in response to a previous tender; or
- b) The contract involved is purely for the purpose of research, experiment, study or development under specific conditions; or

- c) The works/goods/services can be provided only by a particular tenderer for reasons that are:
 - (i) Technical; or
 - (ii) Artistic; or
 - (iii) Connected with the protection of exclusive rights; or
- d) Because of extreme urgency brought about by events unforeseeable by the contracting authority and in accordance with strict conditions; or
- e) Additional works/deliveries/services are ordered under strict conditions; or
- f) New works/services, constituting a repetition of existing works/services are ordered in accordance with strict conditions; or
- g) Service contract awarded to the successful candidate or one of them after a design contest; or
- h) For supplies quoted and purchased on a commodity market; or
- i) For the purchase of supplies on particularly advantageous terms:
 - (i) From a supplier which is definitely winding up its business activities; or
 - (ii) From the receivers or liquidators of a bankruptcy, an arrangement with creditors or a similar procedure; or
- j) All tenders submitted in reply to an open procedure, or a restricted procedure were irregular or unacceptable. Only those tenderers who satisfied the qualitative selection criteria (i.e. PQQ) may be included in the negotiations.

14.314.5 You must have prior written approval of the Service Director responsible, the Service Director: Legal and Community and the Service Director: Resources. Contact ~~Procurement or Legal and Community~~ for advice on preparing your Single Tender Option report.

14.414.6 A “voluntary ex transparency notice” (VEAT) must be published in the OJEU giving reasons for negotiating with a single supplier. This takes the place of the “contract award notice” described by Rule 18 (~~Contract Award~~ ~~Contract Award~~).

Formatted: Font color: Black

14.7 You must follow Rule 19 (Standstill Period).

14.8 In the event that approval has not been obtained for a single tender, in accordance with section 14.5, and a contract has been awarded, the Service Director: Resources and the Service Director: Legal and Community may grant retrospective approval provided the following conditions are met:

- (i) Contract award was compliant with EU procurement law
- (ii) Expenditure is within approved budgets or overspend has been reported
- (iii) Contract award was approved under Section 14 of the Council's Constitution (Responsibility for Functions)
- (iv) The Service Director: Resources and the Service Director: Legal and Community are satisfied that an application for a single tender would have been approved under section 14.5
- (v) The commissioning officer completes an application for retrospective approval to the Service Director: Resources and the Service Director: Legal and Community.

14.514.9 In respect of both retrospective approvals detailed under 14.3 and 14.8, you must also remember to publish a delegated decision for any contract award with an aggregate value of £50,000K and above.

15. Receipt of Quotations / Tenders

- 15.1 All quotations and tenders should be received electronically via the Councils E-tendering system. The documents cannot be accessed until the closing date and time has passed.
- 15.2 Where the circumstances so warrant, a Service Director may postpone for a reasonable period the closing time and date for the receipt of quotations and tenders, provided that all persons from whom tenders have been invited are notified by the same method, and given the same information and that no quotations or tenders have been opened. Bidders must be notified in reasonable time through the E-Tendering System.
- 15.3 Contact [Procurement and Legal and Community Legal](#) for advice if there are any problems with receiving quotations or tenders.

16. Opening Quotations and Tenders

- 16.1 Quotations and Tenders must be submitted through the Councils' e-tendering system. It will automatically record the receipt of the quotation or tender for audit purposes. Each document submitted will be deposited securely in the system to which only the project team and [Procurement and Legal and Community Legal](#) will have access. Once the quotation or tender has been awarded, the documents will be kept securely until the expiry of the retention period.

17. Evaluation Criteria for Quotations and Tenders

- 17.1 The appropriate Service Director, or delegated officer, shall evaluate all the tenders or quotations received in accordance with the evaluation criteria set out in the bid documentation (either the invitation to quote or ITT).-The Project/ Service manager leading the procurement is responsible for organising all the project meetings necessary to complete the procurement process.
- 17.2 You must clearly explain your evaluation scheme to suppliers in your bid documentation.
- 17.3 You should contact Legal ~~Services~~ who will advise on the appropriate criteria for your procurement.
- Price alone
- 17.4 This assesses the price and not the quality (subject only to minimum levels of quality as defined in your specification) of quotations or tenders. This method is appropriate for supply of goods or simple services and is not normally appropriate for complex services or works. A Price only evaluation must not be used for above OJEU tenders.
- 17.5 The Council will accept the quotation or tender that offers the best price (either the cheapest where the Council pays money or the highest when the Council receives money).
- 17.6 Tenders or quotations exceeding the approved budget may only be accepted once the budget holder has liaised with the Accountancy Manager to determine whether, and how, the budget can be increased.
- 17.7 The acceptance of a tender or quotation that is not the lowest priced tender or quotation shall only be accepted if:
- the Cabinet has considered a written report from the appropriate Service Director; or
 - in cases of urgency, the Chief Executive may use Urgency powers as set out in the Constitution. The appropriate Service Director shall report tenders or quotations accepted in this way to the next meeting of the Cabinet.

17.8 Where post tender negotiations have been undertaken in accordance with Rule 24 (Post Tender Negotiation), the appropriate Service Director shall only accept the lowest priced tender received. A tender other than the lowest must not be accepted until the Cabinet has considered a written report from the appropriate Service Director and recommended acceptance of a tender other than the lowest.

Most economically advantageous tender

17.9 This Rule does not provide comprehensive or exhaustive procedures for the application and evaluation of tenders using most economically advantageous tender criteria. It aims to provide officers with practical advice on suggested evaluation methods to ensure that the aims of NHDC can be achieved and demonstrated taking into account value for money.

17.10 The approved starting point ITT includes most economically advantageous tender criteria. Contact Legal [Services](#) for advice on using most economically advantageous tender criteria.

17.11 In its simplest form, the most economically advantageous tender criteria includes a balance between the price and quality aspects of your procurement so that the Council achieves the best product for the best price. Common balances are between 70–30 to 60-40 with the weighting towards either price or quality depending on whether price or quality is more important. The weighting decision is made by the Project/ Service Manager leading the procurement.

17.12 Most economically advantageous tender criteria must be set before the tender process commences and should include the following elements:

- a) a point scoring system for individual quality / best value considerations set at the commencement of the procurement process with weightings applied to quality / best value issues in accordance with their importance to the contract; and
- b) a 'quality threshold' which sets the minimum standards expected. Tenders which fall below this will be excluded from consideration; and
- c) an assessment of the price using either of the Council's "standard" price assessment methods.

18. Contract Award

18.1 Following assessment and the selection of the winning tender each of the losing tenderers must be:

- a) informed of the identity of the successful tenderer; and
- b) informed of the reasons why the Council selected that winning tender; and
- c) provided with a brief summary of the relative advantages of that tender compared with their own.

18.2 You should contact Legal [Services](#) for assistance in preparing these letters to failed tenderers.

18.3 All letters and documents must be uploaded through the Councils' e-tendering system and advice is available from [ProcurementLegal](#).

18.4 A "contract award notice" must be published in the OJEU, Contract Finder (and on the NHDC website) following procurements where the Contract Value is over the EU Threshold. All contract award notices should be published via the Councils' e-tendering system within 30 days of contract award. Again, [ProcurementLegal](#) can assist with this.

~~18.5~~ An official NHDC Decision notice must be prepared by the Project Manager and sent to Member Services to be published on the Councils website. Templates are available on the [Legal Procurement Resource](#) pages of the Intranet at the following link.

~~18.5~~ <http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/procurement/standard-procurement-templates>

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18 operative 1.6.18

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/doing-business/procurement/standard-procurement-templates>

- 18.6 The Service Director: [Resources Legal and Community](#) maintains a Contract Register showing all contracts entered into by the Council. Once awarded, all new contracts over £5,000 must be confirmed to [Procurement Services Legal](#) so they can be recorded on the Contracts Register. A standard template which captures contract details can be found on the [Legal Procurement](#) resource pages of the intranet at the link below.

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/procurement/standard-procurement-templates>

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/doing-business/procurement/standard-procurement-templates>

19. Standstill Period (for EU Threshold only)

- 19.1 Before a contract for value above the EU threshold can be signed, the Council must wait a minimum of 10 calendar days. This “standstill period” allows a losing supplier to challenge the award decision.
- 19.2 The standstill period must be built into the procurement timetable and immediately follows notification to all tenderers regarding the proposed Contract Award.
- 19.3 You must inform [Procurement and Legal and Community Legal](#) if any failed potential contractor challenges a contract award as soon as possible.
- 19.4 You must not sign a contract during the standstill period or after any challenge without specific advice in writing from the Service Director: Legal and Community.

20. Contracts

20.1 All contracts must be in writing and follow the requirements of [Part F Specific Rules of Contract](#).

20.1.1 Contracts under £10,000 must, as a minimum, be in the form of an official order, issued and approved by an authorised officer in accordance with the Council’s Financial Regulations.

20.1.2 Contracts in excess of £10,000, or in any other case where the responsible Service Director decides it is necessary or desirable, must be drawn up in a form approved by the Service Director: Legal and Community.

20.3 For all [works](#) contracts over £50,000, documents must be completed and signed by both parties prior to any works commencing.

20.4 For goods and services contracts over £50,000, contracts should be signed [before commencement where practical. As soon as you become aware that this is not feasible, notification should be provided to the Service Director: Legal and Community with the reasons why this shall not take place and likely timescale and plan for any delays in execution.](#)

20.5 Where the contract value exceeds £100,000 you should consider whether the contract should be sealed as a deed. Sealing as a deed offers a number of technical advantages over contracts under hand (i.e. just signed by an appropriate person). The main relevant advantage for the Council is that it can sue under the contract for 12 years (against the normal 6 years). This is most relevant for works or significant services contracts where latent defects or incorrect advice may only cause problems years later. Please contact Legal [Services](#) for advice if you are unsure.

Formatted: Block Text, Left, Indent
Hanging: 1.27 cm, Right: -0.2 cm,
Space After: 0 pt, Outline numbered
Level: 2 + Numbering Style: 1, 2, 3,
+ Start at: 1 + Alignment: Left +
Aligned at: 0.63 cm + Indent at: 1.
cm, Tab stops: -0.16 cm, Left

Formatted: Font: Arial, 11 pt

20.420.6 _____ A contract of any value may be sealed if requested by the responsible Service Director or the Service Director: Legal and Community. Please contact Legal [Services](#) for advice.

21. Joining a Framework Agreement

In some instances, a Framework Agreement can offer the most cost effective and appropriate means by which to procure. However, this may not necessarily be the case and so should be regarded as one potential means by which to proceed and should be compared to the alternatives. Procurement will research framework agreements to ensure that they are available for use by NHDC and Legal [Services](#) will check the terms and conditions of the call off agreement, if one exists. The Project manager should ensure that it is fit for purpose for their needs.

- 21.1 A Framework Agreement is “an agreement between one or more contracting authorities and one or more economic operators, the purpose of which is to establish the terms governing contracts to be awarded during a given period, in particular with regard to price and, where appropriate, the quantity envisaged”.
- 21.2 This means that the Framework Agreement is a pre-agreed set of terms and conditions that establishes the terms and conditions that will apply to subsequent contracts (a **Call-Off** contract) created under the Framework Agreement but it does not itself do anything except explain how Call-Off contracts are made.
- 21.3 Frameworks can cover supply of works, goods or services. They are useful because once a Framework Agreement has been set up to cover a particular type of works, goods or service you do not need to carry out a full procurement exercise each time you need that supply. Dependant on how the framework has been set up, you can either purchase directly from a supplier, or carry out a mini competition amongst the suppliers. Some consortia require an access agreement to be completed. If there is no appropriate Framework Agreement in place, you can consider whether your procurement is suitable to be a Framework Agreement with other authorities. Procuring supply through a Framework Agreement may lead to price efficiencies due to increased purchasing power.
- 21.4 The maximum duration of a Framework Agreement is four years. The term of a framework agreement may not exceed four years, save in exceptional cases, duly justified. Contact [Procurement Legal](#) who will provide advice and guidance.
- 21.5 Call-Off contracts may extend beyond the life of the Framework Agreement. The terms of the Framework and the maximum length of call off will need to be considered on a case by case basis.
- 21.6 Useful Framework Agreements include Eastern Shires Purchasing Organisation (ESPO), the Crown Commercial Service (CCS), Hertfordshire Business Services, Supply Hertfordshire, Yorkshire Purchasing Organisation (YPO) North East Purchasing Organisation (NEPO Pro 5 or through any consortia of Local Authorities.

Part E Procurement Issues

22. Waivers

In certain circumstances, it may be necessary to request a variation to these [Contract](#) Procurement Rules. Such a request is referred to as a waiver. You must seek advice from [Procurement and Legal and Community Legal](#) in the first instance.

- 22.1 Waivers are not to be used as an alternative to a lack of forward planning. Where a waiver is needed due to unforeseen circumstances, it will be expected that the waiver will be for a short period of time to allow for a tender/quotation process to be carried out. Waivers which have been submitted to extend contracts or for reasons of extreme urgency must have a timetable attached to highlight when

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.18 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18 operative 1.6.18

the procurement process is going to be undertaken within the framework of the Contract Procurement Rules.

- 22.2 In relation to procurements above the EU Threshold, few elements of these Rules may be waived. Please contact [Procurement and Legal and Community Legal](#) for advice as the general law of public procurement is more complicated than can be summarised in these Rules. Approval must be obtained from the Service Director: Legal and Community and the Service Director: Resources but they may refer the matter to Cabinet for approval.
- 22.3 In relation to procurements below the EU Threshold only, any individual provision in these Rules may be waived. The waiver has to be agreed by:
- a) a Service Director, in consultation with the Service Director: Resources and the Service Director: Legal and Community, if the Contract Value is £100,000 or less (whether for goods, services or works); or
 - b) the Service Director: Legal and Community and the Service Director: Resources in consultation with the appropriate Executive Member ~~the Cabinet~~ for contracts over £100,000 however they may refer the matter to Cabinet for approval; or
 - ~~c) the Chief Executive in consultation with the Leader of the Council if the matter is urgent and a meeting of the Cabinet cannot be called; or~~
 - ~~d) the Chief Executive activating the Council's 'Major Incident Plan' or a business recovery plan (as outlined in the business continuity management strategy).~~
- 22.4 All waivers other than a major incident, require a written report being submitted in advance by the authorised officer explaining that the waiver is justified because either:
- a) the nature of the market for the works to be carried out or the supplies or services to be provided has been investigated and is demonstrated to be such that a departure from the requirements of Contract Procurement Rules is justifiable; or
 - b) the contract is for supplies, works or services that are required in circumstances of extreme urgency that could not reasonably have been foreseen; or
 - c) the circumstances of the proposed contract are covered by legislative exemptions (whether under EU or UK law); or
 - d) where it is in the Council's overall interest; or
 - e) there are other circumstances which are genuinely exceptional.
- 22.5 A record of the decision and the reasons for it must be kept by the Service Director: Legal and Community.

23. Arithmetic Errors

- 23.1 Contractors can alter their tenders or quotations after the date specified for their receipt, but before the acceptance of the tender or quotation, where examination by officers of the tender or quotation reveals arithmetic errors or discrepancies which affect the tender or quotation figure.
- 23.2 The contractor should be given details in writing of all such errors or discrepancies and afforded an opportunity of confirming, amending or withdrawing their offer in writing.

24. Post Tender Negotiation

- 24.1 In evaluating tenders, the appropriate Service Director, or delegated officer, may invite one or more contractors who have submitted a tender to submit a revised offer following post-tender negotiations.

- 24.2 All post-tender negotiations shall:

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18 operative 1.6.18

- a) only be undertaken where permitted by law and where the appropriate Service Director, together with the Service Director: Legal and Community and the Service Director: Resources consider additional financial or other benefits may be obtained which over the period of the contract shall exceed the cost of the post-tender negotiation process; and
 - b) be conducted by a team of officers approved in writing by the appropriate Service Director, Service Director: Legal and Community and Service Director: Resources; and
 - c) be conducted in accordance with guidance issued by ~~the Service Director: Legal and Community~~Legal and in compliance with current EU legislation; and
 - d) not disclose commercially sensitive information supplied by other bidders for the contract.
- 24.3 Post tender negotiations shall not be used to degrade the original specification unless the capital or revenue budget is exceeded, or the appropriate Service Director considers other special circumstances exist. This process must not put other tenderers at a disadvantage, distort competition or affect adversely trust in the competitive tendering process.
- 24.4 The appropriate Service Director or delegated officer shall ensure that minutes of all post-tender negotiation meetings are properly taken with all savings and benefits offered clearly costed. Following negotiations, but before the letting of the contract, amendments to the original tender submitted shall be put in writing by the contractor and shall be signed by ~~him~~them.
- 24.5 There are restrictions on the use of post tender negotiations on Procurements over the EU Threshold, which follow the open or restricted procedures. The European Commission specifically rules out any negotiation on price:-

“In open and restricted procedures, all negotiations with candidates or tenderers on fundamental aspects of contracts, variations in which are likely to distort competition, and in particular on prices, shall be ruled out. However, discussions with candidates or tenderers may be held only for the purpose of clarifying, or supplementing the content of their tenders or the requirements of the contracting authorities, and provided this does not involve discrimination.”

Part F Specific Rules of Contract

25. Contractual Terms

- 25.1 The Council has a number of different standard contractual terms and conditions depending on the nature of the goods, services or type of works you require. These may require additional elements depending on the complexity, risk and importance of the contract. You should ask Legal Services for advice on the appropriate terms and conditions as early as possible.
- 25.2 If your contractor requests or demands that the Council contracts on their standard terms and conditions, you should contact Legal Services who will advise you in relation to these terms. In many cases a Suppliers' terms can be acceptable but sometimes negotiation is required.
- 25.3 If your procurement is a Call-Off under a framework agreement there is usually no scope for negotiation on the terms and conditions of that contract. The terms were pre-agreed when the framework agreement was signed. Under a Call-Off contract the only terms that are negotiated are: when and where the work will start; how much will be paid; and when the work will be completed.

26. Specification

- 26.1 A specification is a description of what the Council requires in as much detail as possible. This description should include all the supply that the contractor will provide and it should list all our requirements so that any quotation / tender prices reflect as fully as possible what the Council requires. Contact Legal ~~Services~~ for assistance with preparing your specification.
- 26.2 Contracts must be consistent with the delivery of the Council's approved policies, service plans and budgets. If for any reason a proposed contract appears likely to require a change to any policy, service plan and/or budget approval of those changes must be obtained in accordance with the Constitution prior to procurement being initiated.
- 26.3 Specifications should have regard to all of the Council's priorities and policies, as well as any legislative requirements. In the specification (and/or award criteria) consideration should be given to factors such as the method of working or production, sourcing of materials, packaging, or type of fuel employed, whole life costing including disposal and environmental issues, which may impact on those wider policies and priorities. These factors should not be applied as a means to stifle competition and be commensurate with potential costs.
- 26.4 Whenever a contract is re-let, the opportunity should be taken to revise the specification to achieve better value, where necessary, seeking approvals as above.

27. Payment

- 27.1 Payment to contractors on account of works contracts should only be made on receipt of a payment certificate, or equivalent under the JCT, NEC, ICE or other industry standard form contract (whether of staged or complete works).

27.2 Payment terms applied to all contracts will be within 30 days of receipt of goods or satisfactory completion of services and will be made by BACS, unless there are exceptional circumstances such as stage payments, or there is a benefit to the council to reduce the payment terms.

~~27.227.3~~ Contracts which involve the use of subcontractors shall contain a contract clause ensuring payment throughout the supply chain of 30 days payment terms.

~~27.3~~ Service Directors shall be responsible for ensuring appropriate systems are in place for carrying out checks on contractors' final accounts. These checks should include a suitably qualified officer who has had no previous involvement in the contract.

~~27.4~~ _____

~~27.527.4~~ _____

Part G Ongoing Requirements

28. Variations

You should seek advice from Legal ~~and Community and Procurement~~ before negotiating / agreeing any variation.

This Rule 30 may apply in addition to the Rule 14 Single Tender Option.

- 28.1 There are two variation procedures: where the contract has provision and procedures relating to variations; and where the contract has no provision for variation.

28.2 Any contract may be varied through the use of a deed of variation. -You should seek advice from Legal [Services](#) before agreeing any variation.

28.3 All variations must be in writing and conform to the appropriate Financial Regulations.

28.4 The Service Director: Resources [and Service Director: Legal and Community](#) must be informed in writing of any variation.

28.5 Any variation under this section does not require reassessment of the original procurement process as a result of a change in the overall value of the contract.

Contractual variation

28.6 A Service Director may authorise variations to a contract where the variation procedure and the resulting change in price is determined in accordance with the contract terms – this may be through the use of agreed formula or through serving and agreeing change notices.

Non-contractual variation

28.7 A Service Director may authorise variations to a contract where:

- a) delay would incur substantial cost penalties to the Council; or
- b) the proposed variations are unavoidable and/or essential for the project to proceed or continue; or
- c) circumstances arise during the performance of the contract which make it necessary to amend the specification or method of carrying out the works or services or purchase of goods;
in each case provided that:
 - (i) the cost to the Council of the variation is less than or equal to 20% of the value of the contract, for contracts up to £250,000 for works and £100,000 for services or goods; or
 - (ii) the cost to the Council of the variation is less than or equal to 10% of the value of the contract, for contracts above £250,000 subject to a maximum value– of £50,000k in respect of the variation; or
- d) in the case of urgency or unforeseen circumstances where works, services or goods are to be added to or deleted from the contract which are substantially different in scope. In this instance the Service Director must report this action to the Executive Member as soon as possible;

and, if relevant, that the variation is within the scope of the original contract notice or any applicable limits as set out in the Public Contracts Regulations 2015 or the overall value of the contract remains below the applicable OJEU threshold.

28.8 Subject to the availability of budget funding, a Executive Member may authorise variations to a contract which:

- a) adds more than 20% to the value of the contract for contracts up to £250,000; or
- b) adds more than 10% to the estimated value of the contract for contracts above £250,000 subject to a maximum value of £50,000k in respect of the variation; or
- c) in the case of urgency or unforeseen circumstances where works, services or goods are to be added to or deleted from the contract which are substantially different in scope;
- d) results in minor changes to the contract terms or specification;

in each case provided that any additional cost does not take the total costs of the contract over the limits permissible by the Public Contracts Regulations 2015 or, if relevant, that the variation is within the scope of the original contract notice.

28.9 Any other variation must be agreed by Cabinet or under delegated authority from Cabinet, ~~or be formally authorised under another delegated authority.~~

29. Extensions

You should seek advice from ~~both Procurement and Legal and Community~~ before negotiating / agreeing any extension, including Framework Agreements.

29.1 All extensions must be in writing in a form approved by the Service Director: Legal and Community and conform to the appropriate Financial Regulations.

29.2 If the terms of a contract allow for an extension (or the law otherwise permits), then a Service Director may, following ~~agreement or consultation with~~ the Service Director: Resources and the relevant Executive Member authorise an single extension of a contract by up to ~~three~~ twelve six months, up to a value of £100,000.

29.3 ~~The appropriate Executive Member may authorise an~~ If the extension ~~of is for~~ more than ~~three~~ six twelve months OR in excess of £100,000 ~~an single extension may only be with the approval of the approved by Service Director: Resources the appropriate Executive Member,~~ following consultation with the Finance & IT Executive Member ~~and the Service Director: Resources,~~ subject to compliance with rule 30.

29.4 In all cases, officers must demonstrate that a detailed and robust cost/benefit analysis has been undertaken and that sufficient budget is available. ~~Where applicable, e~~ Evidence of the decision making process must be formally recorded in a delegated decision ~~sheet~~ which (in addition to the normal process) is filed on the relevant contract file and a copy sent to the Service Director: Legal and Community.

29.5 Any extension under this section does not require reassessment of the original procurement process ~~as a result of a change in the overall so long as the~~ value of the extended contract ~~if such overall value:~~

- (i) does not exceed any applicable limits as set out in the Public Contracts Regulations 2015; or
- (ii) is within the limits as set out in the original contract notice; or
- (iii) is below the applicable OJEU threshold

30. Contract Management

30.1 Once a contract has been awarded it must be monitored with regular review meetings to raise concerns and issues from both parties.

30.2 You should take minutes of any review meeting for the benefit of the Council and the contractor.

30.3 Contracts identified as Core contracts should be set up with Creditsafe and /or Google Alerts in order to monitor the financial status of the Company. Please contact Accountancy to set up Creditsafe alerts once the contract has been awarded.

30.4 A Contract & Relationship Management guide is ~~currently being developed and will be found available~~ on the Procurement Resource pages of the intranet under the following link:

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/procurement>

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/procurement/contract-management>

Part H Appointment of Consultants

31. Consultants

Before the appointment of any Consultants, Officers must contact ~~Procurement and Legal and Community Legal~~ in the first instance, which will provide advice and guidance on the process.

31.1 It is important that best value is obtained when employing consultants. Therefore, for all instances where the Contract Value of a consultancy appointment (~~see 33.2~~) is over £10,000, the commissioning officer must provide a report to the Service Director responsible containing as a minimum the details listed in Rule 32 (~~Project Details~~Project Details).

Formatted: Font color: Black

31.2 This requirement at 33.1 applies to the appointment of management or other advisory consultancy work (to replace, advise or bolster in-house staff resources in "business as usual" activities) The process outlined in 33.1 does not apply to technical or specialist contracts for services (employed for specific projects and included in approved overall project budget) e.g. specialist engineers, architects, surveyors, barristers etc. However, proper procurement procedures must be followed when appointing in all circumstances and parties must enter into a written contract in the form approved by Legal.

31.3 All consultants (of any type) must provide evidence of adequate professional indemnity insurance as determined by the ~~Risk Manager~~ HCC Insurance Manager prior to their appointment. The requirement for insurance and the levels required should be advised in the specification of works. This insurance must be maintained for a minimum of 6 years after the contract ends.

31.4 It should be a condition of contract with any consultant, agent or professional advisor who is to be responsible to the Council for the award or supervision of a contract on its behalf, that in relation to that contract they shall:

- a) comply with these Procurement Rules as though they were an employee of the Council; and confirm their acknowledgement of this requirement, (this will be particularly relevant if a consultant sub-contracts on behalf of the Council);
- b) engage in skills transfer activities where required and appropriate;
- c) produce on request all the records maintained by them in relation to the contract and award of contract; and
- d) on completion of the contract, transmit all records that they have produced or received that relate to the contract to the appropriate Service Director.

31.5 Any contract must set out the consultants legal obligations to the Council. Further guidance on the use of consultants can be found on the Legal procurement pages of the Intranet at:

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/doing-business/procurement/procurement-guides>

~~31.5 The Service Director shall be responsible for ensuring that the consultant's work is properly monitored on an ongoing basis. This includes:~~

- ~~a) appointing a named project officer or group; and~~
- ~~b) specifying key tasks and dates for consultants; and~~
- ~~c) monitoring costs against budgets; and~~
- ~~d) arranging regular progress meetings with consultants.~~

~~31.6 The project officer shall maintain the following documentation:~~

- ~~a) project brief/objectives; and~~

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.18 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18-operative 1.6.18

- ~~b) minutes of authority, where required; and~~
- ~~e) the agreement with the consultant and any subsequent variations; and~~
- ~~d) records that can demonstrate contractors compliance with contract standards prior to payments being made; and~~
- ~~e) record of payments made to the consultant and for the project; and~~
- ~~f) a project evaluation form.~~

~~31.7 The project officer shall report immediately to the Service Director any material technical or financial deviation by the consultant from the specified agreement.~~

~~31.8 At the end of a project a post-project appraisal exercise should be carried out by the Project Manager (and including Legal and Community, Procurement and other relevant officers) that includes an assessment of the consultant's performance. When a project is complete, the Project Manager shall also forward a copy of the completed Lessons Log to the Performance and Risk Management Team. The team will review the content of the projects Lessons Log and enter the details of the relevant lessons in the Corporate Lessons Learnt Log.~~

~~31.9 Further information is available at~~

~~<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/corporate-governance/project-management>~~

32. Project Details

~~32.1 For consultant appointments £10,000, the Service Director shall be responsible for ensuring that the consultant's work is properly monitored on an ongoing basis. This includes:~~

- ~~a) appointing a named project officer or group; and~~
- ~~b) specifying key tasks and dates for consultants; and~~
- ~~c) monitoring costs against budgets; and~~
- ~~d) arranging regular progress meetings with consultants.~~

~~32.2 The project officer shall report immediately to the Service Director any material technical or financial deviation by the consultant from the specified agreement.~~

~~32.132.3 The project officer shall provide a Projects Details report to the appropriate Service Director which~~
~~Before consultants are invited to bid/tender, the Service Director shall:~~

- ~~a) identifies the project objectives; and~~
- ~~b) documents the reasons for the employment of consultants including the benefits of employing consultants against in-house staff or agency staff; and~~
- ~~c) documents the residual in-house costs to support the consultant and ensure that sufficient budget is available to meet all identified costs; and~~
- ~~d) prepare includes a project brief, includedetailing:~~
 - ~~(i) background; and~~
 - ~~(ii) objectives; and~~
 - ~~(iii) timetable; and~~
 - ~~(iv) costs; and~~

- (v) monitoring arrangements; and
- (vi) documentation standards; and
- (vii) contact names and numbers for enquiries.

32.2 For consultancy appointments over £10,000, at the end of the appointment, an assessment of the consultant's performance should be carried out. This assessment should be documented in the Consultant's Performance Appraisal form and Lessons Learnt Log. Copies of these completed forms should be sent to the relevant stakeholders, with copies to the Procurement Officer.

32.4

32.5 The Procurement Officer in conjunction with the Contract Procurement Group (CPG) will review the lessons learned and recommend if any should be entered into the Corporate Lessons Learnt Log

Further information can be found:

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/corporate-governance/project-management/project-management-overview>

Templates for the Performance Appraisal form and Lessons Learnt Log can be found here:

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/doing-business/procurement/procurement-guides>

Part I Land Transactions

33. Land Transactions

- 33.1 These Rules shall apply to purchases and sales of property and land and to leases for a fixed term of more than twenty years.
- 33.2 All valuations and negotiations in respect of transactions shall be carried out by or under the supervision of a properly qualified Member of the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors or equivalent. **In no circumstances shall Members of the Council conduct them.**
- 33.3 These Rules apply to all valuations of land carried out by a qualified and independent Chartered Surveyor appointed to act on behalf of, or to advise, the Council.
- 33.4 At least two officers of the Council or an officer of the Council and a duly appointed Chartered Surveyor or other agent shall be involved in all negotiations relating to land transactions which engage Section 14 of the Council Constitution (Scheme of Delegation) and any other applicable Section with Terms of Reference for a relevant Committee. .
- 33.5 It shall be the duty of the Council's Chartered Surveyor whether employed or appointed to report on any transaction authorised by the Council to the relevant Committee or Group at appropriate times. Which Committee or Group depends on the particular transaction and the authorisation for that transaction. Please contact Legal and Community for advice.
- 33.6 All valuations prepared for the purpose of a transaction or balance sheet estimate shall be supported by evidence of the values of comparable properties in the locality where information and relevant comparators are available.
- 33.7 No property or land owned or leased by the Council shall be disposed of to a third party until it has been established that no other directorates of the Council have a need for the property or land, and that the current service area confirms no other requirement for the site. ▸

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18-operative 1.6.18

33.8 No property or land owned or leased by the Council, other than land held for investment purposes or previously declared surplus to requirements shall be disposed of until a report has been prepared by the Service Director: Resources and presented to Cabinet containing:

- a) a description of the property or land, its title, physical characteristics and development constraints; and
- b) any information from the Council's records or those of statutory undertakers which would affect the property or land's value or development potential; and
- c) an assessment of the development potential of the property or land; and
- d) evidence that the property or land has been offered to all directorates and that the Council has no operational use for the property or land; and
- e) recommendations on the following:
 - (i) the title to be transferred; and
 - (ii) the method of disposal; and
 - (iii) whether negotiations must proceed with a special purchaser; and
 - (iv) the estimated price the Council may receive (in a Part 2 report)
- f) In arriving at the recommendation, other factors that officers need to take into consideration are:
 - (i) issues that need to be resolved before marketing of the property or land can proceed; and
 - (ii) whether legal and other costs must be recovered from the prospective purchaser and if so an estimate of their amount; and
 - (iii) whether the appointment of external advisors or agents is required

33.9 All disposals of property or land owned or leased by the Council shall be by one of the following methods: Private Treaty, Public Auction, Formal Tender, Informal Tender, statutory offer back to the former owner, or long lease. Costs of marketing and disposal will be charged to the receipt.

33.10 In the event that it is decided to dispose of property or land by way of a tender then so far as it is practicable the procedures laid down in the Rules shall apply, subject to a waiver under Rule 22 (Waivers) where it is not practicable to follow the procedures laid down in the Procurement Rules.

33.11 The authorisation required for a land transaction depends on its value and is set out within the Constitution. The following are able to authorise transactions, subject to the value set out in their terms of reference:-

- Service Director: Resources
- Cabinet
- Full Council.

Part J Other Information

34. Glossary of Terms

Concession Contract A contract which allows a Contractor to exploit the works or services for financial gain whilst assuming the usual market risks.

Concessions Directive Means Directive 2014/23/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council

Dynamic Purchasing System Is a procedure available for contracts for works, services and goods commonly available on the market. It operates in a similar way to framework agreements but is processed and managed electronically.

Framework Agreements This is an agreement where the Procurement has been done in such a way as to allow other local authorities to join the contract for particular goods or services. Usually there is some form of “further competition” where we simply say what work or goods we want and the Framework Agreement contractors give us a quotation price for that work, but it might be that prices are fixed.

There are many different sorts of these Framework Agreements and it is worth asking whether there is a Framework Agreement that might suit your requirements. Ask [Procurement and Legal and Community Legal](#) for advice.

EU Threshold These are updated bi-annually and the current figures can be found at <http://www.ojeu.eu/usefullinks.aspx>

Go Local Policy The “go local” policy requires any officer seeking to acquire goods or services, for council use, with an aggregate contract value below £50,000, to first attempt to locate those goods, services or works from a supplier located within the North Herts District Council geographical area. The method of acquisition would be in accordance with the current NHDC Contracts and Procurement Rules. If the “go local” policy cannot be applied, because, for instance, there is no suitable supplier (for example, the procuring officer identifies that prices are too high) within the area, then policy would have been exhausted and considered not to be appropriate, and explained as such within the usual procurement process. The overarching principle of this policy would be that, for appropriate procurement, NHDC **will aim to use** local suppliers for the provision of goods, services and works, having full regard for the principles of “best consideration”.

The Cabinet report detailing the Go Local policy can be found at the link below.

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/procurement/general-procurement-guides>

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/doing-business/procurement/procurement-guides>

Invitation to Tender The ITT is a document that details the goods or services we require in

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18-operative 1.6.18

(ITT) sufficient detail for the interested contractors to give us an accurate quotation of price and how they will meet our minimum expected service levels.

The ITT will also contain a Form of Contract that we will require the winning bidder to use. -There are also a number of certificates that we require tenderers to return.

There is a standard ITT starting point which contains all of the legal requirements that you will need to complete with help from Legal and Community. This will be tailored to suit your requirements.

OJEU This stands for Official Journal of the European Union. It used to be a print journal but is now a website where local authorities throughout the EU publish details of their procurements to the public. -Interested contractors can search the website and find details of contracts that they may want to tender for. -If a procurement is over the EU Threshold it must be published on OJEU. Procurement will do this for you.

Prior Information Notice (PIN) A published notice which advertises the procurement in advance. Use of a PIN allows timescales to be shortened. In some circumstances it can be used instead of a Contract Notice.

Price or Value Price or value is the total cost or value of a contract, or transaction **net of any tax or incidental fees**. Note: a decision can be made up to the price or value as set out in these Rules or otherwise as set out in the Council Constitution, notwithstanding that additional tax (for example VAT/ SDLT)/ or fees (for example land registration) may then apply.

Social Value The Public Services (Social Values) Act 2012 imposes an active duty on relevant contracting Authorities to consider the economic, environmental and social benefits that can be achieved through commissioning. It does so by requiring consideration of the following –

How to improve through procurement, the social, economic and environmental well being of the area served by the Contracting Authority and

How to undertake a procurement process with a view to securing that improvement.

You will need to consider Social Value for all procurements above the EU threshold for goods and Services.

Guidance on The Social Value Act and it's application and the Cabinet report can be found at the following location.

<http://intranet.north-herts.gov.uk/home/finance-and-procurement/procurement/general-procurement-guides>

Pre-Qualification Questionnaires (PQQ) Standard Selection Used to shortlist bidders when there are likely to be large number of suppliers expressing an interest in the contract. It works by splitting the procurement process into two stages. The first, the PQQ-SSQ stage involves assessing the company's general

CPR Full Council approved version 24.11.16 Amended under Delegated Decision 31.5.18 operative 1.6.18

Questionnaire (SSQ) competence as a contracting party to provide the services – but not the way that they would actually provide the services. This is done by assessing their financial standing, and other matters that do not relate to the quality of their services, just their ability to provide the service over the contract lifetime which is assessed by the second stage, the ITT. The PQQ-SSQ assessment is normally quicker and easier than the full assessment that would be carried out in the ITT and for this reason is useful. Where there is no -PQQSSQ, the ITT itself would ask these questions. There is a standard PQQ-SSQ starting point which contains all of the legal requirements that you will need to complete with help from Legal and Community. This will be tailored to suit your requirements.

35. Key Contacts

Procurement	Procurement Officer Ext. 4284 Payments & Reconciliation Manager Ext 4606
Legal and Community	Service Director: Legal and Community Ext. 4370 Legal Commercial Team Manager Contracts and Procurement Solicitor Ext. 4578 Procurement Officer Ext. 4284
Shared Internal Audit Services	Audit Manager 01438 845508
Committee Services	Democratic Services Manager Ext TBC Committee & Member <u>and Scrutiny</u> Services Mgr Ext. 4403 TBC Committee, Member and Scrutiny Officers Secretary Ext. 4590 [x 2 tbc]
Finance/Financial Appraisals	Service Director: Resources Ext. 4243 Accountancy Manager Ext. 4470
Risk & Insurance	Risk & HCC -Insurance Manager 01438 843565
Risk	Controls, Risk & Performance Manager Ext 4606
Health & Safety	Health & Safety Officer Ext. 4600
Equalities/Environmental	Senior Policy Manager Ext. 4835
Freedom of Information / Data Protection	Information & Records Mgr Ext. 4563

This page is intentionally left blank

**COUNCIL
17 JANUARY 2019**

PUBLIC DOCUMENT

ITEM 6B

TITLE OF REPORT: NOTIFICATION OF OTHER BUSINESS

Extract from the draft Minutes of the Cabinet meeting held on 18 December 2018

79. RECOMMENDATION TO COUNCIL – CHIEF INSPECTOR JULIE WHEATLEY

The Leader of the Council informed the Cabinet of the following item of 'Other Business' regarding Chief Inspector Julie Wheatley.

After 8 years serving the North Hertfordshire community in various positions, the Leader explained that Chief Inspector Julie Wheatley had been promoted to Superintendent and would therefore be leaving her role in the New Year. During the four years that Chief Inspector Wheatley had been the North Hertfordshire Chief Inspector she had worked hard to build strong partnerships with the Authority and other local partners to improve community safety and reduce anti-social behaviour and crime and disorder.

It was noted that North Hertfordshire is one of the highest performing Community Safety Partnerships in the county, is one of the safest places to live in Hertfordshire and the country and has the highest rates of victim satisfaction in the county.

To acknowledge the hard work and determination of Chief Inspector Wheatley, the Cabinet,

RECOMMENDED TO FULL COUNCIL:

That in accordance with paragraph 4.4.1(b) of the Council's Constitution, Full Council recognises the exceptional contribution to the community made by Chief Inspector Julie Wheatley and places on record our sincere thanks and appreciation for her service in North Hertfordshire.

REASON FOR DECISION: As explained in the prelude to the recommendation.

This page is intentionally left blank

COUNCIL
17 JANUARY 2019

PUBLIC DOCUMENT

ITEM 6C

TITLE OF REPORT: TREASURY MANAGEMENT SECOND QUARTER 2018/19

Extract from the draft Minutes of the Cabinet meeting held on 18 December 2018

88. TREASURY MANAGEMENT SECOND QUARTER 2018/19

The Deputy Leader of the Council presented a report to the Cabinet of the Treasury Management activities in the second quarter of 2018/19 to the end of September. The current forecast was that the amount of investment interest expected to be generated during the year was £0.320 million, which was an increase of £0.065 million on the working budget.

The Cabinet were also informed of the performance against the Prudential and Treasury indicators. During the second quarter the Council had operated within the treasury and prudential indicators as set out in the Treasury Management Strategy Statement and in compliance with the Council's approved Treasury Management Practices.

Following a vote it was,

RESOLVED: That the Cabinet note the position of Treasury Management activity at the end of September 2018; and

RECOMMENDED TO COUNCIL: That Council note the position of Treasury Management activity as at the end of September 2018.

REASONS FOR DECISION: To ensure the Council's continued compliance with CIPFA's code of practice on Treasury Management and the Local Government Act 2003 and that the Council manages its exposure to interest and capital risk.

This page is intentionally left blank

**COUNCIL
17 JANUARY 2019**

PUBLIC DOCUMENT

REPORT PRESENTED TO THE CABINET ON 18 DECEMBER 2018

TITLE OF REPORT: TREASURY MANAGEMENT SECOND QUARTER 2018/19

REPORT OF: SERVICE DIRECTOR - RESOURCES
EXECUTIVE MEMBER : CLLR JULIAN CUNNINGHAM
COUNCIL PRIORITY : RESPONSIVE AND EFFICIENT

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

- 1.1 To inform Cabinet of the Treasury Management activities in the second quarter of 2018/19 to the end of September. The current forecast is that the amount of investment interest expected to be generated during the year is £0.320 million. This is an increase of £0.065 million on the working budget.
- 1.2 To inform Cabinet of the performance against the Prudential and Treasury indicators. During the second quarter the Council has operated within the treasury and prudential indicators as set out in the Treasury Management Strategy Statement and in compliance with the Council's approved Treasury Management Practices.

2. RECOMMENDATIONS

- 2.1 Cabinet is asked to note the position of Treasury Management activity as at the end of September 2018.
- 2.1 Cabinet is asked to recommend to Council to note the position of Treasury Management activity as at the end of September 2018.

3. REASONS FOR RECOMMENDATIONS

- 3.1 To ensure the Council's continued compliance with CIPFA's code of practice on Treasury Management and the Local Government Act 2003 and that the Council manages its exposure to interest and capital risk.

4. ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED

- 4.1 The primary principle governing the Council's investment criteria is the security of its investments, which includes credit, liquidity and market risk (see section 8 below). After this the return (or yield) is then considered, which provides an income source for the Council. In relation to this the Council could take a different view on its appetite for risk (e.g. unrated Building Societies and non-UK investments), which would be reflected in the Treasury Strategy. In general, greater returns can be achieved by taking on greater risk. Once the Strategy has been set for the year, there is limited scope for alternative options as Officers will seek the best return that is in accordance with the Treasury Strategy. Our current strategy has meant that we have been able to achieve a yield that is above the average achieved by the Link Hertfordshire and Buckinghamshire Investment Benchmarking Group.

5. CONSULTATION WITH RELEVANT MEMBERS AND EXTERNAL ORGANISATIONS

- 5.1 There are quarterly updates with the Authority's Cash Manager, Tradition and regular meetings with Treasury advisors (Link).

6. FORWARD PLAN

- 6.1 This report contains a recommendation on a key decision that was first notified to the public in the Forward Plan on the 12 October 2018.

7. BACKGROUND

- 7.1 Members adopted the 2018/19 Treasury Strategy at the meeting of full Council on the 8 February 2018.
- 7.2 Link Asset Services Ltd were first contracted to provide Treasury advice for the financial year 2012/13 and this arrangement has been extended until 2018/19. The service includes:

- Regular updates on economic and political changes which may impact on the Council's borrowing and investment strategies
- Information on investment counterparty creditworthiness
- Technical updates
- Access to the Technical Advisory Group.

8. RELEVANT CONSIDERATIONS

- 8.1 In summary, during the second quarter the Council has operated within the treasury and prudential indicators as set out in the Treasury Management Strategy Statement and in compliance with the Treasury Management Practices.
- 8.2 The Council generated £0.159 million of interest during the first six months of 2018/19. The average interest rate on all outstanding investments at the 30 September was 0.97%.
- 8.3 The Council's activities expose it to a variety of risks (credit, liquidity and market). The Treasury Strategy sets out the Authority's appetite for the level of exposure to these risks.
- 8.4 **Credit Risk** is the possibility that other parties fail to pay back amounts that have been invested by the Council. This risk is mitigated by assessing the counterparties with whom the Council invests. For banks and building societies that are credit rated by Fitch, they must have a rating of BBB or above. Where building societies do not have a credit rating, then the level of investment is assessed against the overall assets of the institution. Due to the different risks that they are exposed to, the Council splits its investments between banks and building societies and can have a maximum of 75% invested in each.
- 8.5 The Council also invests with other Local Authorities and Public Corporations (when appropriate opportunities are available) and in Money Market Funds. Money Market Funds are limited to 25% of total investments. A Money Market Fund is a regulated, stand-alone pooled investment vehicle which actively invests its assets in a diversified portfolio of mainly high grade, short-term money market instruments.
- 8.6 As at 30 September the split of investments was:

Banks	28%
Building Societies	46%
Local Authorities	18%
Money Market Funds	8%

- 8.7 **Liquidity Risk** is the possibility that the Authority may not have funds available to meet its commitments to make payments.
- 8.8 Cash flow forecasts are prepared to determine the level of funds required to meet the day to day commitments. The level of funds available for longer term investments at 30th September was £22.0 million which is primarily determined by the level of expenditure on the Council's Capital programme.

- 8.9 **Market Risk** is the possibility that financial loss might arise as a result of changes in interest rates.
- 8.10 Investing long term (greater than one year) currently achieves higher interest rates than short term deals. The risk of long term deals are two fold:
- (i) The longer the time period the longer the investment is exposed to default.
 - (ii) If the investment has a fixed interest rate, interest rates could rise and the potential to invest at a higher rate will be lost until the investment matures.
- 8.11 Members have indicated that they are prepared to accept the market risk within the limits expressed in the Treasury Strategy, which allows up to 40% of investments to be invested for longer than 364 days at any one time. At the end of the second quarter the Council had no investments for longer than 364 days. During the second quarter, three deals were placed for one year totalling £3.0 million. The largest was for £2.0 million which equated to 5.6% of outstanding investments on the day of the deal.
- 8.12 The **return (or yield)** that the Council achieves is affected by both the level of risk as well as general market conditions. It continues to prove challenging to find acceptable counterparties willing to pay a reasonable return on cash investments, either long or short term. This issue is expected to continue during 2018/19 and beyond.
- 8.13 The Council had a negative **Capital Financing Requirement** (CFR) of £10.3 million (as at 31st March 2018), which means that it has a high level of cash investments. The CFR is expected to reduce to approximately £2.5 million by the end of the year if capital expenditure matches the current profile of spend. The Council currently only has historic borrowing which is not cost effective to repay early.

9. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS

- 9.1 The Cabinet has a responsibility to keep under review the budget of the Council and any other matter having substantial implications for the financial resources of the Council.
- 9.2 Section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972 states that:
“every local authority shall make arrangements for the proper administration of their financial affairs and shall secure that one of their officers has responsibility for the administration of those affairs.”
- 9.3 The Prudential Indicators comply with the Local Government Act 2003.

10. FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

- 10.1 The amount of investment interest expected to be generated during the year is £0.320 million.
- 10.2 Potential options for inclusion in the Treasury Strategy are considered as and when identified. Any proposals to amend the Strategy are reported to Full Council, via Cabinet, for approval.

11. RISK IMPLICATIONS

- 11.1 Risks associated with treasury management and procedures to minimise risk are outlined in the Treasury Management Practices document, TMP1, which was adopted by Cabinet in July 2003 and is revisited annually as part of the Treasury Strategy review. The risk on the General Fund of a fall of investment interest below the budgeted level is dependant on banks and building societies need for borrowing. The introduction of the Funding for Lending Scheme which allows financial institutions access to low cost funding from Government for an extended period has impacted on their need to borrow and the rates at which they are prepared to borrow.

12. EQUALITIES IMPLICATIONS

- 12.1 In line with the Public Sector Equality Duty, public bodies must, in the exercise of their functions, give due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination, harassment, victimisation, to advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between those who share a protected characteristic and those who do not.
- 12.2 There are no direct equalities implications arising from this report.

13. SOCIAL VALUE IMPLICATIONS

- 13.1 The Social Value Act and “go local” policy do not apply to this report.

14. HUMAN RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS

- 14.1 There are no direct human resource or equality implications.

15. CONTACT OFFICERS

Author

- 15.1 Dean Fury, Corporate Support Accountant, Tel 474509, email, dean.fury@north-herts.gov.uk

Contributors

- 15.2 Ian Couper, Head of Finance, Performance and Asset Management, Tel 474243, email ian.couper@north-herts.gov.uk
- 15.3 Antonio Ciampa, Accountancy Manager, Tel 474566, email, Antonio.ciampa@north-herts.gov.uk
- 15.4 Reuben Ayavoo, Senior Policy officer, Tel 47212, email Reuben.ayavoo@north-herts.gov.uk

16. BACKGROUND PAPERS

Treasury Strategy 2018/19
CIPFA Prudential Code for Capital Finance in Local Authorities

**COUNCIL
17 JANUARY 2019**

PUBLIC DOCUMENT

TITLE OF REPORT: COUNCIL TAX REDUCTION SCHEME (CTRS) 2019/2020

Extract from the draft Minutes of the Cabinet meeting held on 18 December 2018

89. COUNCIL TAX REDUCTION SCHEME (CTRS) 2019/2020

The Deputy Leader of the Council presented a report to the Cabinet to provide an update of how the Scheme was operating in its sixth year and to recommend that no changes be made to the Scheme for 2019/2020.

Following a vote it was

RESOLVED:

- i That Cabinet notes the CTRS position relating to this and previous financial years;
- ii That there be no changes to the CTRS for 2019/2020.

RECOMMENDED TO COUNCIL;

- iii. That no changes to the CTRS for 2019/2020 be recommended to Council at its meeting on 17 January 2019; and
- iv. That the level of Scheme funding to be allocated to the Parish, Town and Community Councils be the same as 2018/2019 and will be reviewed for 2020/2021.

REASONS FOR DECISION:

- i. To keep the Scheme aligned as far as possible with Housing Benefit.
- ii. To ensure that the Council complies with the requirement to ensure that a Scheme is in place by 11 March 2019.

This page is intentionally left blank

**COUNCIL
17 JANUARY 2019**

PUBLIC DOCUMENT

REPORT PRESENTED TO THE CABINET ON 18 DECEMBER 2018

TITLE OF REPORT: COUNCIL TAX REDUCTION SCHEME (CTRS) 2019/2020

REPORT OF: SERVICE DIRECTOR - CUSTOMERS
EXECUTIVE MEMBER: COUNCILLOR JULIAN CUNNINGHAM
COUNCIL PRIORITY: PROSPER AND PROTECT

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

- 1.1 To provide Cabinet with an update on how the Scheme is operating in its sixth year and to recommend that no changes be made to the Scheme for 2019/2020.

2. RECOMMENDATIONS

- 2.1 That Cabinet notes the CTRS position relating to this and previous financial years.
- 2.2 That there be no changes to the CTRS for 2019/2020 and that this is recommended to Council at its meeting on 17 January 2019.
- 2.3 That Cabinet recommends to the Council that the level of Scheme funding to be allocated to the Parish, Town and Community Councils will be the same as 2018/2019 and will be reviewed for 2020/2021

3. REASONS FOR RECOMMENDATIONS

- 3.1 To keep the Scheme aligned as far as possible with Housing Benefit.
- 3.2 To ensure that the Council complies with the requirement to ensure that a Scheme is in place by 11 March 2019.

4. ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED

- 4.1 As there have been no changes to the Housing Benefit Regulations in the last year that need to be reflected in the Council's CTRS, Cabinet at its meeting on 25 September 2018 opted to recommend that no changes be proposed to the Scheme for 2019/2020 and that this should be recommended to Council at a future meeting in this financial year.
- 4.2 At the Cabinet meeting on 25 September 2018, Officers were asked to review whether there was scope to amend the standard percentage reduction and if so, to report back to this meeting of the Cabinet.
- 4.3 The outcome of the review has been considered by the Executive Member for Finance & IT and it has been decided not to recommend any change to the standard percentage reduction. (See 8.1 to 8.8 below)

5. CONSULTATION WITH RELEVANT MEMBERS AND EXTERNAL ORGANISATIONS

- 5.1 The Executive Member for Finance & IT has been consulted on the outcome of the review on whether there is scope to reduce the standard percentage reduction.
- 5.2 As there are no changes to the CTRS proposed, it has not been necessary to carry out any further consultation.

6. FORWARD PLAN

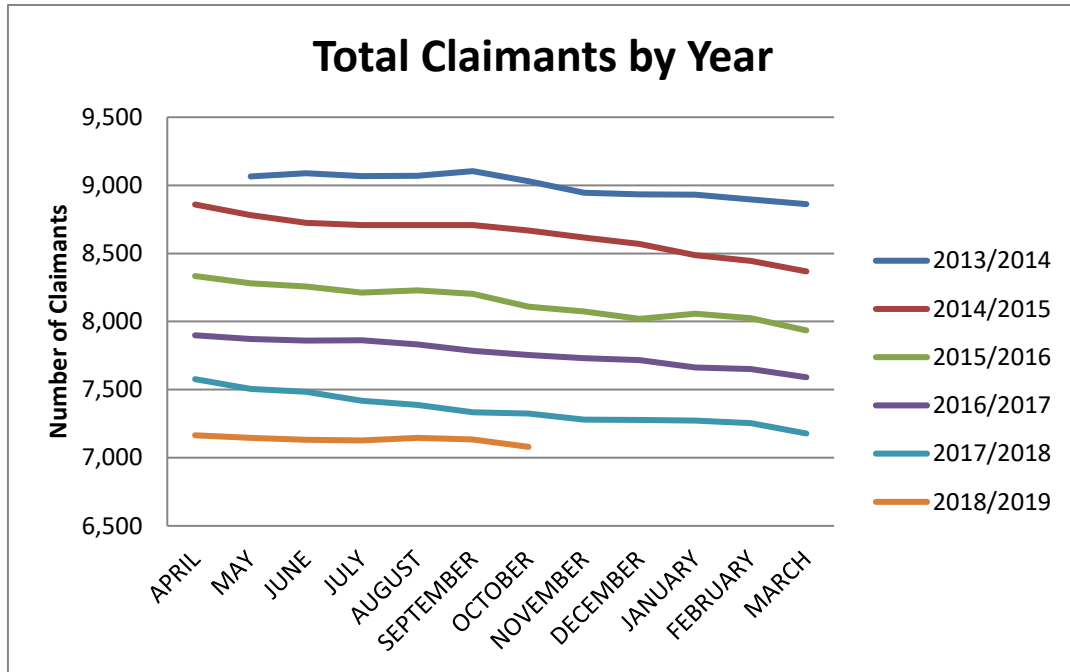
- 6.1 This report contains a recommendation on a key decision that was first notified to the public in the Forward Plan on the 25 July 2018.

7. BACKGROUND

- 7.1 Council Tax Benefit was abolished on 1 April 2013 and was replaced by locally defined Council Tax Reduction Schemes.
- 7.2 2018/2019 is the sixth year of the scheme, which is now fully embedded.
- 7.3 The Council's Scheme is based on the old Council Tax Benefit Scheme and is therefore means-tested with a standard percentage reduction being made to the final award. This reduction was 33.13% for the first two years of the Scheme and has been reduced to 25% for the subsequent three years.

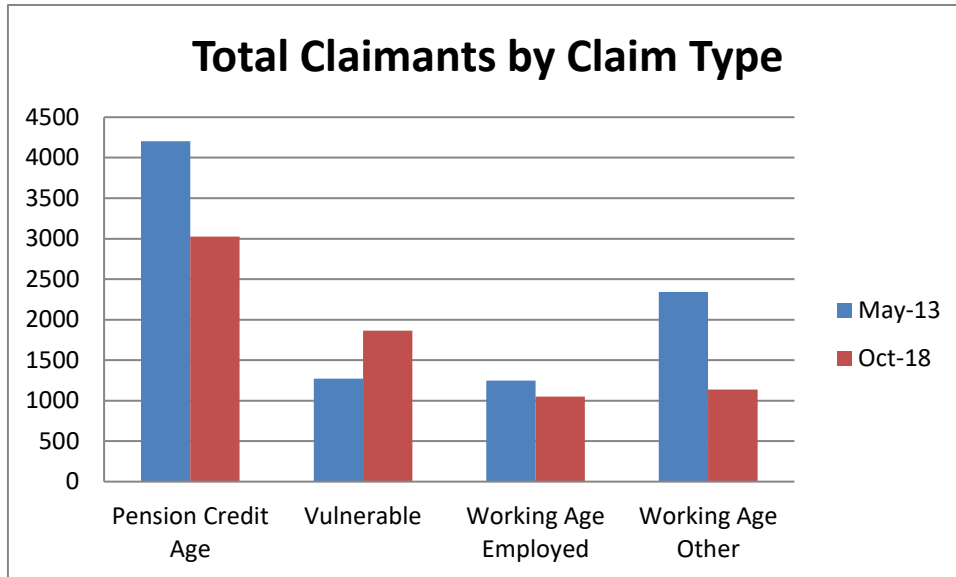
- 7.4 The Scheme has been generally accepted within North Hertfordshire. The Council has received very little feedback on the Scheme and collection rates have been fairly well maintained considering the recent period of austerity.
- 7.5 Prior to this year (2018/2019) the Scheme has shown a steady year-on-year reduction in the amounts awarded. Because the caseload has steadily declined, this has meant that any increases in awards due to increased levels of Council Tax have been offset by a reduction in the number of recipients. It was hoped to make the Scheme more generous in previous years, however it was decided not to do so when it was announced that the County Council would be increasing its Council Tax by 3.99% in 2016/2017. The County Council also opted for the maximum allowable increase in 2017/2018 and 2018/2019 of 4.99%. The District Council and the Police & Crime Commissioner for Hertfordshire have also increased their Council Tax by the maximum allowable; however as the District Council and Police & Crime Commissioner for Hertfordshire precepts amounts to only around 23% of the total Council Tax bill (13% and 10% respectively), their increases do not have the same effect on the amount of CTRS paid as that of the County Council.
- 7.6 In 2018/2019, the reduction in caseload has flattened out with the result that the Scheme is expected to make awards of around £253,600 more in this year than 2017/2018.
- 7.7 Chart 1 below shows how claimant numbers have steadily reduced since the Scheme was introduced up to this current year, where they have flattened out.

Chart 1



7.8 Chart 2 below shows the difference in number of customers by claimant type from May 2013 (the earliest data we have) to October 2018. Members will see there has been a significant reduction in the number of Pension Credit Age customers (1,177 less or 28.00%) and Working Age customers not working (1,205 less or 51.47%). The number of Working Age customers in work has remained fairly constant (197 less or 15.77%), however the number of Vulnerable claimants, i.e. those in receipt of a Disability Premium has increased significantly (594 more or 46.73%).

Chart 2



- 7.9 Significantly, these reductions are less marked for the current year, where the reductions in caseload are significantly reduced. Pension Credit Age customers have reduced by 93 or 2.98%; Working Age claimants not working by 18 or 1.56%; Working Age customers in work have reduced by 36 or 3.31% and the number of Vulnerable customers has increased by 49 or 2.70%.

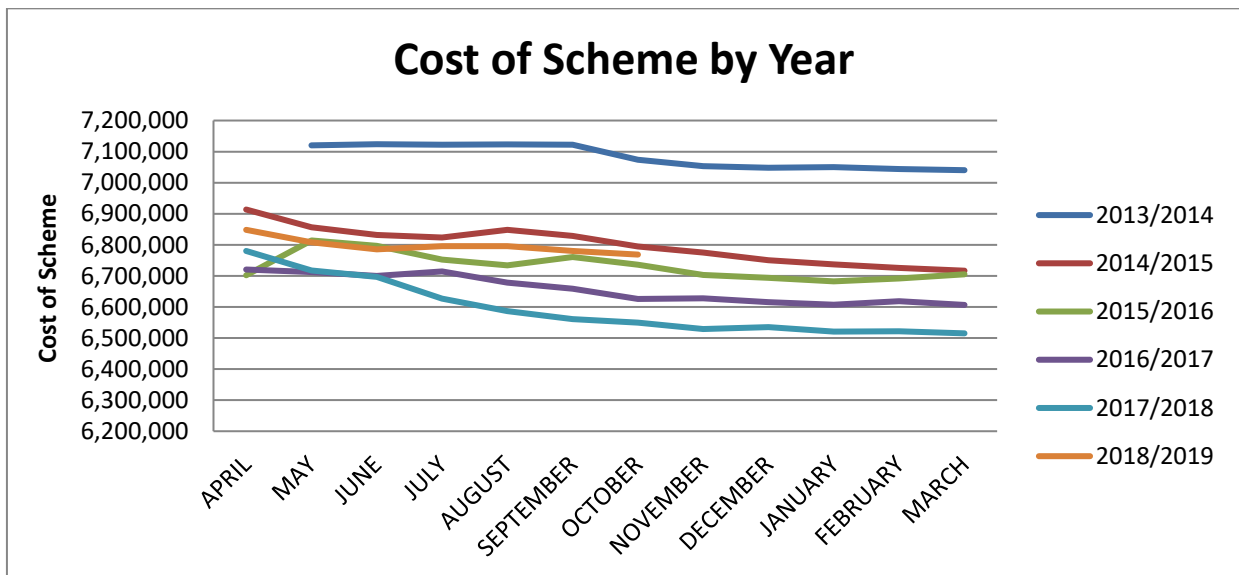
8. RELEVANT CONSIDERATIONS

Standard Percentage Reduction

- 8.1 The Scheme is now administered as a Council Tax Discount, no different to a Single Occupancy Discount or other Discount or Exemption. Consequently, there is no direct monetary value but it does have the affect of reducing the Council Tax Base. Any increase in the amount of Council Tax Reduction awarded, through a reduction in the standard percentage reduction will reduce the Tax Base meaning that the Council Tax levied by each Precepting Authority will yield less income.
- 8.2 A reduction in the standard percentage reduction will not benefit all CTRS customers as those of Pension Age and those in receipt of a Disability Premium are protected and receive the same amount of CTRS had Council Tax Benefit remained.

- 8.3 Financial modelling of the CTRS has shown that without a continued steady decrease in caseload, any reduction in the standard percentage reduction would put considerable pressure on the Tax Base with a potential risk that the Collection Fund could show a deficit at the end of the 2019/2020 financial year.
- 8.4 The financial modelling has also shown that a decrease in the standard percentage reduction to 20% will benefit those not already protected within the Scheme by a very modest amount ranging from an average of £0.79 per week for those in work to an average of £1.05 per week for those not in work.
- 8.5 Whilst the benefit to CTRS customers would be very modest, a change to 20% in the standard percentage reduction would have a significant effect on the Tax Base and could reduce the amount of Council Tax raised by this Council by £44K for the Police & Crime Commissioner for Hertfordshire by £34K and most notably for the County Council by £261K.
- 8.6 Chart 3 below shows that whereas the monetary level of awards has reduced year-on-year, the level is expected to increase in 2018/2019 and would increase again in 2019/2020 given the expected increase in Council Tax levels and without a reduction in the caseload.

Chart 3



- 8.7 If the Council was minded to reduce the standard percentage reduction at this time, it would be difficult to then increase it again later should conditions dictate that this would be necessary to limit Council Tax increases and ensure that the Collection Fund did not go into deficit.
- 8.8 For these reasons, it is not considered prudent to recommend any reduction in the standard percentage reduction at this time.

Amount to be distributed to Parish, Town & Community Councils

- 8.6 When CTRS was introduced in 2013, the Government provided funding to each Billing Authority to compensate for the reduction in their Tax Bases as CTRS was to be treated as a Discount and was no longer reimbursed on a pound for pound basis through subsidy arrangements. Each Billing Authority was also given a sum of money to distribute amongst its Parish, Town & Community Councils to compensate for their reduction in the Tax Base.
- 8.7 There is no longer separately identifiable funding within the Council's financial settlement from the Government as the Scheme is now funded by reductions in the Council Tax Base. To continue to compensate Parish, Town & Community Councils for the reductions in their Council Tax Base the principle has now been established that the amount of money distributed by the Council will reduce in line with its own reduction in Government support.
- 8.8 As a four year settlement was announced in February 2016 for the period 2016/2017 to 2019/2020, the Council has already received indication of the funding that it will receive in 2019/20 from Business Rates Baseline and Revenue Support Grant. The level of Revenue Support Grant received by the Council in 2018/19 was zero, and this is expected to be zero in 2019/20. As a result the amount to be distributed to Parish, Town & Community Councils is proposed to be maintained at £38,885 (i.e. the same amount as in 2018/19). The amount of funding that the Council receives from New Homes Bonus is not incorporated in to the calculation used, but it is expected that it will decrease in 2019/20.
- 8.9 Over the life time of the Scheme, this amount distributed to Parish, Town & Community Councils has diminished in value. Awards for 2019/2020 will vary from £11,405 for Royston Town Council to £40 for Bygrave Parish Council. Of the 35 Local Councils, only 10 will receive more than £1,000.

- 8.10 Members have expressed a view at previous Cabinet meetings that this payment should be reviewed. This has been pre-empted by giving the Parish, Town & Community Councils a full year's notice of the Council's intention to review this.
- 8.11 The proposal therefore is to review this next year having given the Parish, Town & Community Councils due notice. It should be noted that the Government does expect Councils to continue to make these payments available to Local Councils. See 10.2 below.

9. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS

- 9.1 Section 5(2) of Schedule 4 of the Local Government Finance Act 2012, which inserts Schedule 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 requires the Council to set its Council Tax Reduction Scheme by 31 January preceding the start of the financial year in which it is to apply. This has been further amended by Regulation 2 of The Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Amendment) (England) Regulations 2017 to 11 March.
- 9.2 Full Council's terms of reference include at 4.4.1 (z) "approving the Council Tax Reduction Scheme". Cabinet's terms of reference include at 5.6.39 recommending to Full Council "The Council Tax Reduction Scheme".
- 9.3 Section 3(1) of Schedule 4 of the Local Government Finance Act 2012, which inserts Schedule 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 requires the Council to consult on any changes to its scheme as follows:
- Consult any Major Precepting Authority which has power to issue a precept to it
 - Publish a draft scheme in such manner as it thinks fit
 - Consult such other persons as it considers are likely to have an interest in the operation of the scheme
- 9.4 For the original scheme implemented for 2013/2014, it was necessary to carry out comprehensive consultation to ensure that the Council complied with the legal requirement to consult and did not leave itself open to challenge. Very minor changes were made to the Scheme in year two and a restricted consultation exercise was carried inviting members of the public to comment on the Council's web site. There were no changes proposed to the Scheme for year three and the practice at that time was that no further consultation was required.
- 9.5 There are no changes proposed for 2019/2020 and consequently there is no requirement to consult with the public.

- 9.6 Cabinet should note that changes to the Scheme cannot be made later in the financial year due to the need to consult before any changes can be implemented.

10. FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

- 10.1 The value of awards is expected to increase by £253,600 based on the position at the end of October 2018. This will be reflected in the Council Tax Base that will be presented to the Council Tax Setting Committee at its meeting on 10 January 2019. As explained in paragraph 7.6 the impact of any change in the Council Tax Base is in proportion to the value of the Council Tax raised, so the greatest impact is on the County Council.
- 10.2 There is no statutory requirement for the Billing Authorities to provide funding to Parish, Town and Community Councils, but it may choose to do so and the Ministry of Housing, Communities and Local Government has made its position clear that it expects Billing Authorities to do so. In 2018/2019 this Council passed on £38,885. The current proposal of funding to Parish, Town and Community Councils in 2019/2020 is £38,885, based on there being no change in Revenue Support Grant.
- 10.3 Cabinet at its meeting on 25 September 2018 expressed the view that this amount should remain the same for 2019/2020 and that it should be reviewed for 2020/2021..

11. RISK IMPLICATIONS

- 11.1 Because the Council is required to implement a demand led Scheme there is a financial risk should the number of claimants increase significantly. Whilst the number of claimants is not increasing, the decrease in numbers has slowed down considerably meaning that there is likely to be a reduction in the Council Tax Base. The amount of Council Tax recovered in the year is monitored by the Overview and Scrutiny Committee on an exception basis. The position on the Collection Fund is also included in the revenue monitoring reports that are presented to the Finance, Audit and Risk Committee and Cabinet.
- 11.2 A further potential risk is the effect that the introduction of Universal Credit Full Service will have on the number of claimants and collection rates. This will be monitored over the next year in preparation for consideration of the CTRS in 2019 for 2020/2021.

12. EQUALITIES IMPLICATIONS

- 12.1 In line with the Public Sector Equality Duty, public bodies must, in the exercise of their functions, give due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination, harassment, victimisation, to advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between those who share a protected characteristic and those who do not.
- 12.2 By conducting extensive consultation when the scheme was first implemented, the Council sought to collect information from those who may be potentially affected by these proposals. The public consultation showed broad support for the scheme. By substantially retaining the same scheme since 2013/2014, the Council continues to meet its obligations under the Equality Act, but current equalities legislation will be checked following decision by Council in January to ensure this remains the case.

13. SOCIAL VALUE IMPLICATIONS

- 13.1 The Social Value Act and “go local” policy do not apply to this report.

14. HUMAN RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS

- 14.1 There are no Human Resources implications in this report.

15. APPENDICES

- 15.1 None

16. CONTACT OFFICERS

16.1 Howard Crompton: Service Director - Customers
howard.crompton@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4247

Ian Couper: Service Director - Resources
ian.couper@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4243

Jeanette Thompson: Service Director – Legal & Community
jeanette.thompson@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4370

Reuben Ayavoo: Senior Policy Officer
reuben.ayavoo@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4212

Kerry Shorrocks: Corporate Human Resources Manager
kerry.shorrocks@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4224

Rachel Cooper: Controls, Risk & Performance Manager
rachel.cooper@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4606

17. BACKGROUND PAPERS

17.1 None

This page is intentionally left blank

COUNCIL
17 January 2019

PUBLIC DOCUMENT

TITLE OF REPORT: COUNCIL TAX REDUCTION SCHEME 2019/2020
REPORT OF: SERVICE DIRECTOR - CUSTOMERS
EXECUTIVE MEMBER: COUNCILLOR JULIAN CUNNINGHAM
COUNCIL PRIORITY: PROSPER AND PROTECT / RESPONSIVE AND EFFICIENT

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

- 1.1 To approve the Council Tax Reduction Scheme (CTRS) for North Hertfordshire for 2019/2020.

2. RECOMMENDATIONS

- 2.1 That the Council is recommended to approve the Scheme attached at Appendix 1 as the Council Tax Reduction Scheme for North Hertfordshire for 2019/2020.
- 2.2 That in accordance with Section 59A.1 of the Council Tax Reduction Scheme referred to in 2.1, the Council sets the percentage by which each award to each recipient in the Non-Protected Groups is reduced at 25.0% for 2019/2020. This remains the same as 2018/2019.
- 2.3 That the amount to be distributed to the Local Precepting Authorities for Council Tax Reduction Scheme Grant is £38,885 and that this is distributed in proportion to the total awards of CTRS in each Local Precepting area.

3. REASONS FOR RECOMMENDATIONS

- 3.1 To comply with the requirement to approve the local Council Tax Reduction Scheme for the coming financial year.

4. ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED

- 4.1 Since the implementation of the CTRS in 2013/2014, it has been the intention to, as far as possible keep the scheme aligned with any changes to the Housing Benefit Regulations. There have been no significant changes to the Housing Benefit Regulations in the last year, which require any changes to the CTRS.

5. CONSULTATION WITH RELEVANT MEMBERS AND EXTERNAL ORGANISATIONS

- 5.1 As part of the consideration of any proposed changes to the Council Tax Reduction Scheme for 2019/2020, the Council is required to consult with the public.
- 5.2 As no changes to the scheme are proposed for 2019/2020, there has been no need for any consultation.

6. FORWARD PLAN

- 6.1 This report contains a recommendation on a key decision that was first notified to the public in the Forward Plan on the 25 July 2018.

7. BACKGROUND

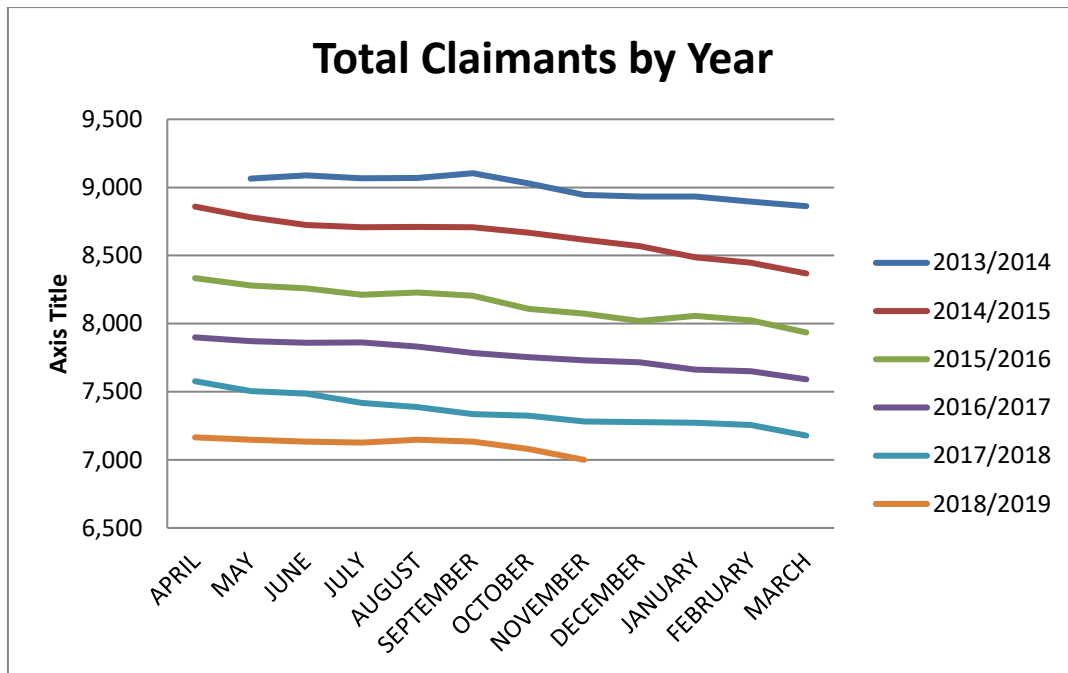
- 7.1 Council Tax Benefit was abolished on 1 April 2013 and was replaced by locally defined Council Tax Reduction Schemes.
- 7.2 2018/2019 is the sixth year of the scheme, which is now fully embedded.
- 7.3 The Council's Scheme is based on the old Council Tax Benefit Scheme and is therefore means-tested with a standard percentage reduction being made to the final award. This reduction was 33.13% for the first two years of the Scheme and has been reduced to 25% for the subsequent three years.
- 7.4 The Scheme has been generally accepted within North Hertfordshire. The Council has received very little feedback on the Scheme and collection rates have been fairly well maintained considering the recent period of austerity.
- 7.5 Prior to this year (2018/2019) the Scheme has shown a steady year-on-year reduction in the amounts awarded. Because the caseload has steadily declined, this has meant that any increases in awards due to increased levels of Council Tax have been offset by a reduction in the number of recipients. It was hoped to make the Scheme more generous in previous years, however it was decided not to do so when it was announced that the County Council would be increasing its Council Tax by 3.99% in 2016/2017. The County Council also opted for the maximum allowable increase in

2017/2018 and 2018/2019 of 4.99%. The District Council and the Police & Crime Commissioner for Hertfordshire have also increased their Council Tax by the maximum allowable; however as the District Council and Police & Crime Commissioner for Hertfordshire precepts amounts to only around 23% of the total Council Tax bill (13% and 10% respectively), their increases do not have the same effect on the amount of CTRS paid as that of the County Council.

7.6 In 2018/2019, the reduction in caseload has flattened out with the result that the Scheme is expected to make awards of around £226,771 more in this year than 2017/2018.

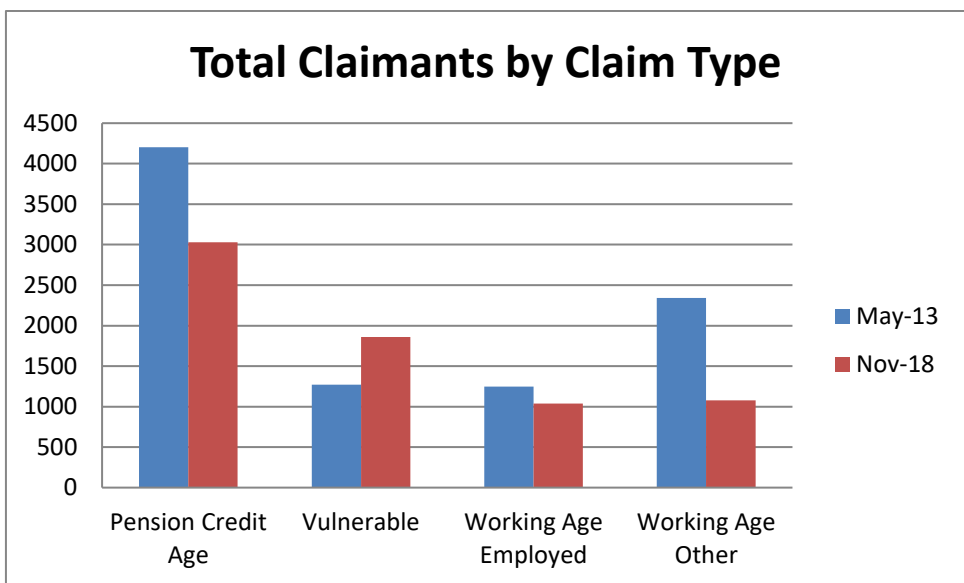
7.7 Chart 1 below shows how claimant numbers have steadily reduced since the Scheme was introduced up to this current year, where they have flattened out, albeit there has been more of a reduction in caseload over the last two months.

Chart 1



7.8 Chart 2 below shows the difference in number of customers by claimant type from May 2013 (the earliest data we have) to November 2018. Members will see there has been a significant reduction in the number of Pension Credit Age customers (1,174 less or 27.9%) and Working Age customers not working (1,265 less or 54.0%). The number of Working Age customers in work has remained fairly constant (213 less or 17.0%), however the number of Vulnerable claimants, i.e. those in receipt of a Disability Premium has increased significantly (587 more or 46.2%).

Chart 2



7.9 Significantly, these reductions are less marked for the current year, where the reductions in caseload are significantly reduced. Pension Credit Age customers have reduced by 72 or 2.32%; Working Age claimants not working by 21 or 1.99%; Working Age customers in work have reduced by 99 or 8.43% and the number of Vulnerable customers has increased by 27 or 1.47%.

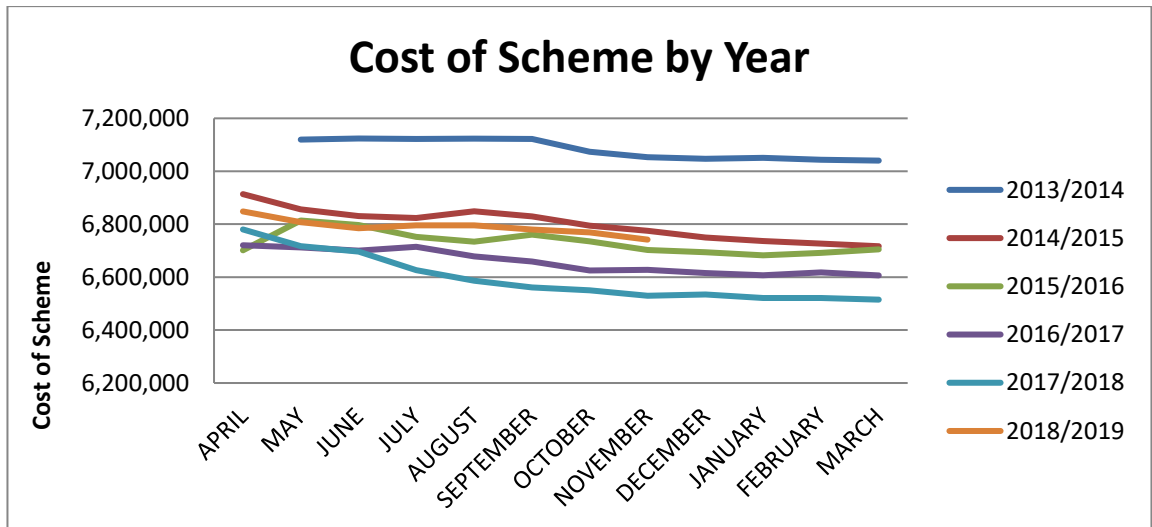
8. RELEVANT CONSIDERATIONS

8.1 Cabinet has considered the implications for the seventh year of the Scheme at two meetings on 26 September 2018 and 18 December 2018.

8.2 Since the Scheme was implemented in 2013, it has been the intention to mirror as far as possible, any changes made to the Housing Benefit Regulations. As there have been no relevant changes in the last year, it was recommended to Cabinet that there should be no changes to the CTRS for 2019/2020.

- 8.3 Cabinet did ask that a review be carried out on the effect of reducing the Standard Percentage Reduction (this is the amount by which awards are reduced for working age customers, who are not in receipt of any disability premium).
- 8.4 The Scheme is now administered as a Council Tax Discount, no different to a Single Occupancy Discount or other Discount or Exemption. Consequently, there is no direct monetary value but it does have the affect of reducing the Council Tax Base. Any increase in the amount of Council Tax Reduction awarded, through a reduction in the Standard Percentage Reduction will reduce the Tax Base meaning that the Council Tax levied by each Precepting Authority will yield less income.
- 8.5 A reduction in the Standard Percentage Reduction will not benefit all CTRS customers as those of Pension Age and those in receipt of a Disability Premium are protected and receive the same amount of CTRS had Council Tax Benefit remained.
- 8.6 Financial modelling of the CTRS has shown that without a continued steady decrease in caseload, any reduction in the Standard Percentage Reduction would put considerable pressure on the Tax Base with a potential risk that the Collection Fund could show a deficit at the end of the 2019/2020 financial year.
- 8.7 The financial modelling has also shown that a decrease in the Standard Percentage Reduction to 20% will benefit those not already protected within the Scheme by a very modest amount ranging from an average of £0.79 per week for those in work to an average of £1.05 per week for those not in work.
- 8.8 Whilst the benefit to CTRS customers would be very modest, a change to 20% in the Standard Percentage Reduction would have a significant effect on the Tax Base and could reduce the amount of Council Tax raised by this Council by £44K for the Police & Crime Commissioner for Hertfordshire by £34K and most notably for the County Council by £261K.
- 8.9 Chart 3 below shows that whereas the monetary level of awards has reduced year-on-year, the level is expected to increase in 2018/2019 and would increase again in 2019/2020 given the expected increase in Council Tax levels and without a continuing reduction in the caseload.

Chart 3



- 8.10 If the Council was minded to reduce the standard percentage reduction at this time, it would be difficult to then increase it again later should conditions dictate that this would be necessary to limit Council Tax increases and ensure that the Collection Fund did not go into deficit.
- 8.11 For these reasons, it was not considered prudent to recommend to Cabinet any reduction in the standard percentage reduction at this time. The scheme recommended by Cabinet to Council therefore maintains the Standard Percentage Reduction at 25%.
- 8.12 At its meeting on 25 September 2018, Cabinet also raised questions about the amount to be distributed to Parish, Town & Community Councils.
- 8.13 When CTRS was introduced in 2013, the Government provided funding to each Billing Authority to compensate for the reduction in their Tax Bases as CTRS was to be treated as a Discount and was no longer reimbursed on a pound for pound basis through subsidy arrangements. Each Billing Authority was also given a sum of money to distribute amongst its Parish, Town & Community Councils to compensate for their reduction in the Tax Base.

- 8.14 There is no longer separately identifiable funding within the Council's financial settlement from the Government as the Scheme is now funded by reductions in the Council Tax Base. To continue to compensate Parish, Town & Community Councils for the reductions in their Council Tax Base the principle has now been established that the amount of money distributed by the Council will reduce in line with its own reduction in Government support.
- 8.15 The provisional settlement for 2019/20 was announced on 13th December 2018. This proposed the Business Rates Baseline and Revenue Support Grant that the Council will receive in 2019/20, and whilst it is subject to final consultation this is what is used in budget planning. The level of Revenue Support Grant (RSG) received by the Council in 2018/19 was zero, and will be maintained at zero in 2019/20 (i.e. a negative RSG will not be applied). As a result the amount to be distributed to Parish, Town & Community Councils is proposed to be maintained at £38,885 (i.e. the same amount as in 2018/19). The amount of funding that the Council receives from New Homes Bonus is not incorporated in to the calculation used, but will decrease in 2019/20.
- 8.16 Over the life time of the Scheme, this amount distributed to Parish, Town & Community Councils has diminished in value. Awards for 2019/2020 will vary from £11,405 for Royston Town Council to £40 for Bygrave Parish Council. Of the 35 Local Councils, only 10 will receive more than £1,000.
- 8.17 Members have expressed a view at previous Cabinet meetings that this payment should be reviewed. This has been pre-empted by giving the Parish, Town & Community Councils a full year's notice of the Council's intention to review this.
- 8.18 The proposal therefore is to review this next year having given the Parish, Town & Community Councils due notice. It should be noted that the Government does expect Councils to continue to make these payments available to Local Councils. See 10.5 below.

9. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS

- 9.1 Section 5(2) of Schedule 4 of the Local Government Finance Act 2012, which inserts Schedule 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 requires the Council to set its Council Tax Reduction Scheme by 31 January preceding the start of the financial year in which it is to apply. This has been further amended by Regulation 2 of The Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Amendment) (England) Regulations 2017 to 11 March.
- 9.2 Full Council's terms of reference include at 4.4.1 (z) "approving the Council Tax Reduction Scheme". Cabinet's terms of reference include at 5.6.39 recommending to Full Council "The Council Tax Reduction Scheme".

9.3 Section 3(1) of Schedule 4 of the Local Government Finance Act 2012, which inserts Schedule 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 requires the Council to consult on any changes to its scheme as follows:

- Consult any Major Precepting Authority which has power to issue a precept to it
- Publish a draft scheme in such manner as it thinks fit
- Consult such other persons as it considers are likely to have an interest in the operation of the scheme

9.4 For the original scheme implemented for 2013/2014, it was necessary to carry out comprehensive consultation to ensure that the Council complied with the legal requirement to consult and did not leave itself open to challenge. Very minor changes have been made to the Scheme in year two onwards and restricted consultation exercises have been carried out inviting members of the public to comment on the Council's web site.

9.5 There are no changes proposed for 2019/2020 and consequently there is no requirement to consult with the public.

9.6 Members should note that changes to the Scheme cannot be made later in this financial year due to the need to consult before any changes can be implemented.

10. FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

10.1 These have been largely considered in Section 8 of this report.

10.2 Section 59A.1 of the Scheme requires the Council to set the percentage by which awards to the non-protected claimants are reduced.

10.3 For the reasons covered in this report, Cabinet is recommending no change to the percentage reduction for 2018/2019 and that this should remain at 25%.

10.4 The value of awards is expected to increase by £226,771 based on the position at the end of November 2018. This was reflected in the Council Tax Base that was presented to the Council Tax Setting Committee at its meeting on 10 January 2019. As explained in paragraph 7.6 the impact of any change in the Council Tax Base is in proportion to the value of the Council Tax raised, so the greatest impact is on the County Council.

- 10.5 There is no statutory requirement for the Billing Authorities to provide funding to Parish, Town and Community Councils, but it may choose to do so and the Ministry of Housing, Communities and Local Government has made its position clear that it expects Billing Authorities to do so. In 2018/2019 this Council passed on £38,885. The current proposal of funding to Parish, Town and Community Councils in 2019/2020 is £38,885, based on there being no change in Revenue Support Grant.
- 10.6 Cabinet at its meeting on 25 September 2018 expressed the view that this amount should remain the same for 2019/2020 and that it should be reviewed for 2020/2021.

11. RISK IMPLICATIONS

- 11.1 Because the Council is required to implement a demand led Scheme there is a financial risk should the number of claimants increase significantly. Whilst the number of claimants is not increasing, the decrease in numbers has slowed down considerably meaning that there is likely to be a reduction in the Council Tax Base. The amount of Council Tax recovered in the year is monitored by the Overview and Scrutiny Committee on an exception basis. The position on the Collection Fund is also included in the revenue monitoring reports that are presented to the Finance, Audit and Risk Committee and Cabinet.
- 11.2 The ability for Major Precepting Authorities to increase their Council Taxes by up to 3% (or £24.00 in the case of the Police & Crime Commissioner) in 2019/20 without the need for a referendum will put pressure on the Scheme unless the caseload continues to reduce.
- 11.3 Any substantive changes to the Scheme at this stage could need to be reversed in subsequent years, if it does result in a larger than expected value of the amount of CTRS awarded.
- 11.4 A further potential risk is the effect that the introduction of Universal Credit Full Service will have on the number of claimants and collection rates. This will be monitored over the next year in preparation for consideration of the CTRS in 2019 for 2020/2021.

12. EQUALITIES IMPLICATIONS

- 12.1 In line with the Public Sector Equality Duty, public bodies must, in the exercise of their functions, give due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination, harassment, victimisation, to advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between those who share a protected characteristic and those who do not.

- 12.2 By conducting extensive consultation when the scheme was first implemented, the Council sought to collect information from those who may be potentially affected by these proposals. The public consultation showed broad support for the scheme. By substantially retaining the same scheme since 2013/2014, the Council continues to meet its obligations under the Equality Act, but current equalities legislation will be checked following the decision by Council to ensure this remains the case.

SOCIAL VALUE IMPLICATIONS

- 13.1 The Social Value Act and “go local” policy do not apply to this report.

14. HUMAN RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS

- 14.1 There are no Human Resources implications in this report.

15. APPENDICES

- 15.1 Appendix 1 – Council Tax Reduction Scheme 2019/2020

16. CONTACT OFFICERS

- 16.1 Howard Crompton: Service Director - Customers
howard.crompton@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4247

Ian Couper: Service Director - Resources
ian.couper@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4243

Jeanette Thompson: Service Director – Legal & Community
jeanette.thompson@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4370

Reuben Ayavoo: Senior Policy Officer
reuben.ayavoo@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4212

Kerry Shorrocks: Corporate Human Resources Manager
kerry.shorrocks@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4224

Rachel Cooper: Controls, Risk & Performance Manager
rachel.cooper@north-herts.gov.uk; ext. 4606

17. BACKGROUND PAPERS

17.1 Report to Cabinet Meeting on 26 September 2018

17.2 Report to Cabinet Meeting on 18 December 2018

This page is intentionally left blank



North Hertfordshire District Council
Council Tax Reduction Scheme
S13A and Schedule 1a of the Local Government Finance Act 1992



North Hertfordshire District Council - Council Tax Reduction Scheme	1
1.0 Introduction to the Council Tax Reduction Scheme	7
2.0 Interpretation – an explanation of the terms used within this scheme	14
3.0 Definition of non-dependant	22
4.0 Requirement to provide a National Insurance Number	23
5.0 Persons who have attained the qualifying age for state pension credit	23
6.0 Remunerative work	23
7.0 Persons treated as not being in Great Britain and Persons Subject to Immigration Control	24
Persons subject to immigration control.....	26
7A.0 Transitional provision	26
8.0 Temporary Absence (period of absence).....	26
Sections 9 - 11	29
The family for Council tax reduction purposes.....	29
9.0 Membership of a family.....	30
10.0 Circumstances in which a person is to be treated as responsible (or not responsible) for a child or young person.	30
11.0 Circumstances in which a child or young person is to be treated as being or not being a member of the household	31
Sections 12 – 14 & Schedule 1.....	32
Applicable Amounts for Council tax reduction purposes	32
12.0 Applicable amounts.....	33
13.0 Polygamous marriages	33
14.0 Applicable amount: persons who are not pensioners who have an award of universal credit	33
Sections 15 – 32 & Schedules 3 & 4.....	35
Definition and the treatment of income for Council tax reduction purposes.....	35
15.0 Calculation of income and capital of members of applicant’s family and of a polygamous marriage	36
16.0 Circumstances in which capital and income of non-dependant is to be treated as applicant’s	37
17.0 Calculation of income on a weekly basis.....	37
18.0 Treatment of child care charges.....	37
19.0 Average weekly earnings of employed earners	41
20.0 Average weekly earnings of self-employed earners	42
21.0 Average weekly income other than earnings.....	42
22.0 Calculation of average weekly income from tax credits	42
23.0 Calculation of weekly income	43
24.0 Disregard of changes in tax, contributions etc.....	43
25.0 Earnings of employed earners.....	43
26.0 Calculation of net earnings of employed earners	44
27.0 Earnings of self-employed earners.....	45



28.0	Calculation of net profit of self-employed earners	46
29.0	Deduction of tax and contributions of self-employed earners	48
30.0	Calculation of income other than earnings	48
31.0	Capital treated as income	50
32.0	Notional income	50
	Sections 33 – 42 & Schedule 5	53
	Definition and the treatment of capital for Council tax reduction purposes	53
33.0	Capital limit	54
34.0	Calculation of capital	54
35.0	Disregard of capital of child and young person	54
36.0	Income treated as capital	54
37.0	Calculation of capital in the United Kingdom	54
38.0	Calculation of capital outside the United Kingdom	55
39.0	Notional capital	55
40.0	Not Used	56
41.0	Capital jointly held	56
42.0	Calculation of tariff income from capital	56
	Sections 43 - 56	58
	Definition and the treatment of students for Council tax reduction purposes	58
43.0	Student related definitions	59
44.0	Treatment of students	62
45.0	Students who are excluded from entitlement to council tax reduction	62
46.0	Calculation of grant income	63
47.0	Calculation of covenant income where a contribution is assessed	64
48.0	Covenant income where no grant income or no contribution is assessed	65
49.0	Student Covenant Income and Grant income – non disregard	65
50.0	Other amounts to be disregarded	65
51.0	Treatment of student loans	65
51A.0	Treatment of fee loans	67
52.0	Treatment of payments from access funds	67
53.0	Disregard of contribution	67
54.0	Further disregard of student’s income	67
55.0	Income treated as capital	68
56.0	Disregard of changes occurring during summer vacation	68
	Sections 57 – 63	69
	The calculation and amount of Council tax reduction	69
57.0	Maximum council tax reduction	70
58.0	Non-dependant deductions	70



59.0 Council tax reduction taper (applies to persons defined within Class E)	72
59A.0 Reduction of entitlement (Classes D, E & F).....	72
60.0 Extended reductions	72
60A.0 Duration of extended reduction period	73
60B.0 Amount of extended reduction.....	73
60C Extended reductions – movers.....	74
60D.0 Relationship between extended reduction and entitlement to council tax reduction under the general conditions of entitlement.....	74
61.0 Extended reductions (qualifying contributory benefits)	74
61A.0 Duration of extended reduction period (qualifying contributory benefits).....	75
61B.0 Amount of extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits).....	75
61C.0 Extended reductions (qualifying contributory benefits) – movers	76
61D.0 Relationship between extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) and entitlement to council tax reduction under the general conditions of entitlement	76
62.0 Alternative maximum council tax reduction (Second Adult Reduction) (Class F)	76
63.0 Residents of a dwelling to whom Second Adult Reduction does not apply	77
Sections 64 – 67.....	78
Dates on which entitlement and changes of circumstances are to take effect	78
64.0 Date on which entitlement is to begin	79
65.0 - 66.0 Not Used	79
67.0 Date on which change of circumstances is to take effect	79
Sections 68– 74A	80
Claiming and the treatment of claims for Council tax reduction purposes.....	80
69.0 Procedure by which a person may apply for a reduction under the authority’s scheme.....	82
70.0 Submission of evidence electronically	85
71.0 Use of telephone provided evidence	85
72.0 Information and evidence	85
73.0 Amendment and withdrawal of application.....	86
74.0 Duty to notify changes of circumstances	87
Sections 75- 90	89
Decisions, decision notices and awards of Council tax reduction	89
75.0 Decisions by the authority.....	90
76.0 Notification of decision	90
77.0 Time and manner of granting council tax reduction	91
78.0 Persons to whom support is to be paid	91
79.0 Shortfall in support / reduction.....	92
80.0 Payment on the death of the person entitled.....	92
81.0 Offsetting	92
82.0 Payment where there is joint and several liability	92
83.0 – 90.0 Not used.....	93



Sections 91 – 94.....	94
Collection, holding and forwarding of information for Council tax reduction purposes.....	94
91.0 Use of information from and to the Department of Work and Pensions (DWP) and Her Majesty’s Revenues and Customs (HMRC).....	95
92.0 Collection of information	95
93.0 Recording and holding information	95
94.0 Forwarding of information	95
Sections 95 – 98.....	96
Revisions, Written Statements, Termination of Council tax reduction	96
95.0 Persons affected by Decisions.....	97
96.0 Revisions of Decisions	97
97.0 Written Statements.....	97
98.0 Terminations	97
Section 99	98
Appeals against the authority’s decisions	98
99.0 Procedure by which a person may make an appeal against certain decisions of the authority	99
Section 100.....	100
Procedure for applying for a discretionary reduction	100
100.0 Procedure for an application to the authority for a reduction under section 13A(1)(c) of the 1992 Act.....	101
Section 101 – 106A.....	102
Electronic Communication	102
101.0 Interpretation.....	103
102.0 Conditions for the use of electronic communication.....	103
103.0 Use of intermediaries.....	103
104.0 Effect of delivering information by means of electronic communication.....	103
105.0 Proof of identity of sender or recipient of information	104
106.0 Proof of delivery of information.....	104
106A.0Proof of content of information.....	104
Section 107.....	105
Counter Fraud and Compliance	105
107.0 Counter Fraud and compliance	106
Schedule 1	107
Applicable Amounts	107
Personal Allowance	108
Family Premiums	108
Premiums	109
Disability Premium	109
Additional Condition for the Disability Premiums.....	109



Severe Disability Premiums	109
Enhanced Disability Premium.....	109
Disabled Child Premium	109
Carer Premium	109
Persons in receipt of concessionary payments	109
Persons in receipt of benefit for another	110
Amounts of Premium	110
The components.....	111
Transitional Addition	111
Amount of transitional addition	111
Schedule 2	112
Second Adult Reduction	112
(Alternative Maximum Council tax reduction)	112
Schedule 3	115
Sums to be disregarded in the calculation of earnings	115
Schedule 4	121
Sums to be disregarded in the calculation of income other than earnings.....	121
Schedule 5	132
Capital to be disregarded	132

1.0 Introduction to the Council Tax Reduction Scheme

- 1.1 The following has been adopted by the Council and details the Council Tax Reduction scheme for the period from 1st April 2019.
- 1.2 This document details how the scheme will operate for both pension credit age and working age applicants and in accordance with Section 13A of the Local Government Finance Act 1992 specifies the classes of person who are to be entitled to a reduction under the scheme and is effective from 1st April 2019 for a period of one financial year.
- 1.3 The scheme in respect of pension age applicants is defined by Central Government within the following:
- Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012;
 - Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements and Default Scheme) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2012;
 - Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Transitional Provision) (England) Regulations 2013;
 - Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Detection of Fraud and Enforcement) (England) Regulations 2013;
 - Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2013;
 - The Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) (Amendment) (No. 2) Regulations 2014;
 - The Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2015;
 - The Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) (Amendment) Regulations 2016;
 - The Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Amendment) (England) Regulations 2017;
 - The Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Amendment) (England) Regulations 2018; and
 - Local Government Finance Act 1992 (as amended by the Local Government Finance Act 2012)

The scheme for pension age applicants – Central Government’s scheme as defined by the Council Tax Reduction Scheme (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

- 1.4 There are three main classes under the prescribed pension credit age scheme, for each of which there are a number of qualifying criteria. In all cases individuals must not be of a prescribed class exempted from reduction, such as a person subject to immigration control with limited leave to remain. The definition of a pension credit age person is a person who;
- a. has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit; and
 - b. is not, or, if he has a partner, his partner is not;
 - i. a person on income support, on an income-based jobseeker’s allowance or on an income-related employment and support allowance; or
 - ii. a person with an award of universal credit

The three prescribed classes are as follows;

Class A: pensioners whose income is less than the applicable amount.

On any day Class A consists of any person who is a pensioner:

- a. who is for that day liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling of which he is a resident;
- b. who, subject to paragraph 5 of Schedule 1 of the Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012, is not absent from the dwelling throughout the day; in respect of whom a maximum Council Tax Reduction amount can be calculated;
- c. who does not fall within a class of persons prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 2(9) of Schedule 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 and excluded from the authority’s scheme;
- d. whose income (if any) for the relevant week does not exceed his applicable amount calculated



- e. in accordance with paragraph 9 and Schedule 2 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992; not have capital savings above £16,000; and
- f. who has made an application for a reduction under the authority's scheme.

Class B: pensioners whose income is greater than the applicable amount.

On any day class B consists of any person who is a pensioner:

- a. who is for that day liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling of which he is a resident;
- b. who, subject to paragraph 5 of Schedule 1 of the Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012, is not absent from the dwelling throughout the day; in respect of whom a maximum Council Tax Reduction amount can be calculated;
- c. who does not fall within a class of person prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 2(9) of Schedule 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 and excluded from the authority's scheme;
- d. whose income for the relevant week is greater than his applicable amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 9 and Schedule 2 to the Local Government Finance Act 1992;
- e. in respect of whom amount A exceeds amount B where:
 - (i) amount A is the maximum Council Tax Reduction in respect of the day in the applicant's case; and
 - (ii) amount B is 2 6/7 per cent of the difference between his income for the relevant week and his applicable amount;
- g. not have capital savings above £16,000; and
- h. who has made an application for a reduction under the authority's scheme.

Class C: alternative maximum Council Tax Reduction

On any day class C consists of any person who is a pensioner:

- a. who is for that day liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling of which he is a resident;
- b. who, subject to paragraph 5 of Schedule 1 of the Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012, is not absent from the dwelling throughout the day;
- c. in respect of whom a maximum Council Tax Reduction amount can be calculated;
- d. who does not fall within a class of person prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 2(9) of Schedule 1A to the 1992 Act and excluded from the authority's scheme;
- e. who has made an application for a reduction under the authority's scheme; and
- f. in relation to whom the condition below is met.

The condition referred to in sub-paragraph f. is that no other resident of the dwelling is liable to pay rent to the applicant in respect of the dwelling and there is an alternative maximum Council Tax Reduction in respect of the day in the case of that person which is derived from the income, or aggregate income, of one or more residents to whom this sub-paragraph applies.

The above applies to any other resident of the dwelling who:

- a. is not a person who, in accordance with Schedule 1 to the 1992 Act, falls to be disregarded for the purposes of discount;
- b. is not a person who is liable for council tax solely in consequence of the provisions of section 9 of the 1992 Act (spouse's or civil partner's joint and several liability for tax);
- c. is not a person who is residing with a couple or with the members of a polygamous marriage where the applicant is a member of that couple or of that marriage and—
 - (i) in the case of a couple, neither member of that couple is a person who, in accordance with Schedule 1 to the 1992 Act, falls to be disregarded for the purposes of discount; or
 - (ii) in the case of a polygamous marriage, two or more members of that marriage are not persons who, in accordance with Schedule 1 to the 1992 Act, fall to be disregarded for the purposes of discount;
- d. is not a person who, jointly with the applicant, falls within the same paragraph of section 6(2)(a) to (e) of the 1992 Act (persons liable to pay council tax) as applies in the case of the



- applicant; or
- e. is not a person who is residing with two or more persons both or all of whom fall within the same paragraph of section 6(2)(a) to (e) of the 1992 Act where two or more of those persons are not persons who, in accordance with Schedule 1 to the 1992 Act, fall to be disregarded for the purposes of discount.

Disregard of certain incomes

- 1.5 For those who have reached the qualifying age for state pension credit, the Council has resolved to enhance the government scheme (as defined by the Council Tax Reduction Scheme (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012 to disregard in full the following:
- a. a war disablement pension;
 - b. a war widow's pension or war widower's pension;
 - c. a pension payable to a person as a widow, widower or surviving civil partner under any power of Her Majesty otherwise than under an enactment to make provision about pensions for or in respect of persons who have been disabled or have died in consequence of service as members of the armed forces of the Crown;
 - d. a guaranteed income payment;
 - e. a payment made to compensate for the non-payment of such a pension or payment as is mentioned in any of the preceding sub-paragraphs;
 - f. a pension paid by the government of a country outside Great Britain which is analogous to any of the pensions or payments mentioned in sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) above;
 - g. pension paid to victims of National Socialist persecution under any special provision made by the law of the Federal Republic of Germany, or any part of it, or of the Republic of Austria.

The provisions outlined above, enhance the Central Government's scheme.

THE SCHEME FOR WORKING AGE APPLICANTS – THE COUNCIL'S LOCAL SCHEME

- 1.6 The adopted scheme for working age applicants is a means test, which compares income against an assessment of *applicable amounts* (unless otherwise stated). Full details of the working age scheme of the authority are contained within this document from section 2 onwards. The authority is required to specify a scheme for working age and therefore this scheme only applies to a person who;
- a. has not attained the qualifying age for state pension credit; or
 - b. has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit if he, and his partner, is a person on income support, on an income-based jobseeker's allowance, on an income-related employment and support allowance or on universal credit.
- 1.7 The Council has resolved that there will be *three* classes of persons who will receive a reduction in line with adopted scheme. There will be *three* main classes prescribed for, for each of which there will be a number of qualifying criteria. In all cases individuals must not be of a prescribed class exempted from reduction as specified within section 7 of this scheme.

Class D

To obtain reduction the individual (or partner) must:

- a. have not attained the qualifying age for state pension credit¹; or
- b. he has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit and he, or if he has a partner, his partner, is a person on income support, on income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance; or a person with an award of universal credit.
- c. be liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling in which he is solely or mainly resident;
- d. is not deemed to be absent from the dwelling;
- e. not fall within a class of person prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 2(9) of Schedule

¹ Section 5 of this scheme



- f. 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 and excluded from the authority's scheme; be somebody in respect of whom a maximum Council Tax Reduction² amount can be calculated;
- g. not have capital savings above £16,000³;
- h. be a person in respect of whom a day in which s/he is liable to pay council tax falls within a week in respect of which the person's *income*⁴ is **less** than their *applicable amount*⁵ or the applicant or partner is in receipt of income support, jobseekers allowance (income based) or employment and support allowance (income related); and
- i. has made a valid application for reduction⁶.

Maximum Council Tax Reduction stated above is defined within section 57 of this scheme

Class E

To obtain reduction the individual (or partner) must:

- a. have not attained the qualifying age for state pension credit⁷; or
- b. he has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit and he, or if he has a partner, his partner, is a person on income support, on income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance; or a person with an award of universal credit.
- c. has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit if he, and his partner, is a person on income support, on an income-based jobseeker's allowance or on an income-related employment and support allowance or in receipt of an award Universal Credit;
- d. be liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling in which they are solely or mainly resident;
- e. is not deemed to be absent from the dwelling;
- f. not fall within a class of person prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 2(9) of Schedule 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 and excluded from the authority's scheme;
- g. be somebody in respect of whom a maximum Council Tax Reduction⁸ amount can be calculated;
- h. not have capital savings above £16,000⁹;
- i. be a person in respect of whom a day in which s/he is liable to pay council tax falls within a week in respect of which the person's *income*¹⁰ is **more** than their *applicable amount*¹¹;
- j. have made a valid application for reduction¹²;
- k. be a person in respect of whom amount A exceeds amount B where
 - (i) amount A is the maximum Council Tax Reduction in respect of the day in the applicant's case; and
 - (ii) amount B is 2 6/7 per cent of the difference between his income for the relevant week and his applicable amount.

Maximum Council Tax Reduction stated above is defined within section 57 of this scheme

Class F

To obtain reduction the individual must:

- a. have not attained the qualifying age for state pension credit¹³; or
- b. has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit if he, and his partner, is a person

² Sections 57 to 63 of this scheme

³ Sections 33 to 42 and Schedule 5 of this scheme

⁴ Sections 15 to 32 and Schedules 3 and 4 of this scheme

⁵ Sections 12 to 14 and Schedule 1 of this scheme

⁶ Sections 68 to 74a of this scheme

⁷ Section 5 of this scheme

⁸ Sections 57 to 63 of this scheme

⁹ Sections 33 to 42 and Schedule 5 of this scheme

¹⁰ Sections 15 to 32 and Schedules 3 and 4 of this scheme

¹¹ Sections 12 to 14 and Schedule 1 of this scheme

¹² Sections 68 to 74a of this scheme

¹³ Section 5 of this scheme



- on income support, on an income-based jobseeker's allowance or on an income-related employment and support allowance or in receipt of an award universal credit;
- c. be liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling in which they are solely or mainly resident;
 - d. is not deemed to be absent from the dwelling;
 - e. who does not fall within a class of person prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 2(9) of Schedule 1A to the Local Government Finance Act 1992 and excluded from the authority's scheme;
 - f. be somebody in respect of whom a maximum Council Tax Reduction¹⁴ amount can be calculated;
 - g. have made a valid application for reduction¹⁵;
 - h. be somebody who has at least one second adult living with them who is not his partner, not somebody who pays rent, and who is on a *prescribed* low wage and/or *prescribed* benefit, as set out in within sections 62 and 63 and schedule 2 of this scheme.

Maximum Council Tax Reduction stated above is defined within section 57 of this scheme

¹⁴ Sections 57 to 63 of this scheme

¹⁵ Sections 68 to 74a of this scheme



Council Tax Reduction Scheme

Details of support to be given for **working age applicants** for the financial year 2019/20



Sections 2- 8
Definitions and interpretation

2.0 Interpretation – an explanation of the terms used within this scheme

2.1 In this scheme–

- ‘the Act’** means the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992;
- ‘the Administration Act’** means the Social Security Administration Act 1992;
- ‘the 1973 Act’** means the Employment and Training Act 1973;
- ‘the 1992 Act’** means the Local Government Finance Act 1992;
- ‘the 2000 Act’** means the Electronic Communications Act 2000;
- ‘Abbeyfield Home’** means an establishment run by the Abbeyfield Society including all bodies corporate or incorporate which are affiliated to that Society;
- ‘adoption leave’** means a period of absence from work on ordinary or additional adoption leave by virtue of section 75A or 75B of the Employment Rights Act 1996;
- ‘an AFIP’** means an armed forces independence payment payable in accordance with an armed and reserve forces compensation scheme established under section 1(2) of the Armed Forces (Pensions and Compensation) Act 2004
- ‘alternative maximum council tax reduction’** (Second Adult Rebate) means the amount determined in accordance with section 62 and Schedule 2;
- ‘applicable amount’** means the amount determined in accordance with schedule 1 of this scheme
- ‘applicant’** means a person who the authority designates as able to claim Council tax reduction – for the purposes of this scheme all references are in the masculine gender but apply equally to male and female;
- ‘application’** means an application for a reduction under this scheme:
- ‘appropriate DWP office’** means an office of the Department for Work and Pensions dealing with state pension credit or office which is normally open to the public for the receipt of claims for income support, a jobseeker’s allowance or an employment and support allowance;
- ‘assessment period’** means such period as is prescribed in sections 19 to 21 over which income falls to be calculated;
- ‘attendance allowance’** means–
- (a) an attendance allowance under Part 3 of the Act;
 - (b) an increase of disablement pension under section 104 or 105 of the Act;
 - (c) a payment under regulations made in exercise of the power conferred by paragraph 7(2)(b) of Part 2 of Schedule 8 to the Act;
 - (d) an increase of an allowance which is payable in respect of constant attendance under paragraph 4 of Part 1 of Schedule 8 to the Act;
 - (e) a payment by virtue of article 14, 15, 16, 43 or 44 of the Personal Injuries (Civilians) Scheme 1983 or any analogous payment; or
 - (f) any payment based on need for attendance which is paid as part of a war disablement pension;
- ‘the authority’** means a billing authority in relation to whose area this scheme has effect by virtue of paragraph 4(6) of Schedule 1A to the 1992 Act;
- ‘Back to Work scheme(s)’** means any scheme defined within the Jobseekers (Back to Work Schemes) Act 2013 or Jobseeker’s Allowance (Schemes for Assisting Persons to Obtain Employment) Regulations 2013;
- ‘basic rate’**, where it relates to the rate of tax, has the same meaning as in the Income Tax Act 2007 (see section 989 of that Act).
- ‘the benefit Acts’** means the Act (SSBA) and the Jobseekers Act 1995 and the Welfare Reform Act 2007;
- ‘board and lodging accommodation’** means accommodation provided to a family, for a charge which is inclusive of the provision of that accommodation and at least some cooked or prepared meals which both are cooked or prepared (by a person other than the person to whom the accommodation is provided or a member of his family) and are consumed in that accommodation or associated premises;
- ‘care home’** has the meaning given by section 3 of the Care Standards Act 2000 and in Scotland means a care home service within the meaning given by section 2(3) of the

Regulation of Care (Scotland) Act 2001 and in Northern Ireland means a nursing home within the meaning of Article 11 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003 or a residential care home within the meaning of Article 10 of that Order;

‘the Caxton Foundation’ means the charitable trust of that name established on 28th March 2011 out of funds provided by the Secretary of State for the benefit of certain persons suffering from hepatitis C and other persons eligible for payment in accordance with its provisions;

‘child’ means a person under the age of 16;

‘child benefit’ has the meaning given by section 141 of the SSCBA as amended by The Child Benefit (General), Child Tax Credit (Amendment) Regulations 2014 and The Child Benefit (General) (Amendment) Regulations 2015;

‘the Children Order’ means the Children (Northern Ireland) Order 1995;

‘child tax credit’ means a child tax credit under section 8 of the Tax Credits Act 2002;

‘claim’ means a claim for council tax reduction;

‘close relative’ means a parent, parent-in-law, son, son-in-law, daughter, daughter-in-law, step-parent, step-son, step-daughter, brother, sister, or if any of the preceding persons is one member of a couple, the other member of that couple;

‘concessionary payment’ means a payment made under arrangements made by the Secretary of State with the consent of the Treasury which is charged either to the National Insurance Fund or to a Departmental Expenditure Vote to which payments of benefit or tax credits under the benefit Acts or the Tax Credits Act are charged;

‘the Consequential Provisions Regulations’ means the Housing Benefit and Council tax reduction (Consequential Provisions) Regulations 2006;

‘contributory employment and support allowance’ means an allowance under Part 1 of the Welfare Reform Act 2007 as amended by the provisions of Schedule 3, and Part 1 of Schedule 14, to the Welfare Reform Act 2012 that remove references to an income-related allowance and a contributory allowance under Part 1 of the Welfare Reform Act 2007 as that Part has effect apart from those provisions;

‘converted employment and support allowance’ means an employment and support allowance which is not income-related and to which a person is entitled as a result of a conversion decision within the meaning of the Employment and Support Allowance (Existing Awards) Regulations 2008;

‘council tax benefit’ means council tax benefit under Part 7 of the SSCBA;

‘council tax reduction scheme’ has the same meaning as **‘council tax reduction or reduction’**

‘council tax reduction’ means council tax reduction as defined by S13a Local Government Finance Act 1992 (as amended);

‘couple’ means;

- (a) a man and a woman who are married to each other and are members of the same household;
- (b) a man and a woman who are not married to each other but are living together as husband and wife;
- (c) two people of the same sex who are civil partners of each other and are members of the same household; or
- (d) two people of the same sex who are not civil partners of each other but are living together as if they were civil partners,

Two people of the same sex are to be treated as living together as if they were civil partners if, and only if, they would be treated as living together as husband and wife were they of opposite sexes. The above includes the Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 and The Marriage (Same Sex Couples) Act 2013 (Commencement No. 3) Order 2014;

‘date of claim’ means the date on which the application or claim is made, or treated as made, for the purposes of this scheme

‘designated authority’ means any of the following;

the local authority; or a person providing services to, or authorised to exercise any function of, any such authority;

‘designated office’ means the office designated by the authority for the receipt of claims for council tax reduction;

- (a) by notice upon or with a form approved by it for the purpose of claiming council tax

reduction; or

(b) by reference upon or with such a form to some other document available from it and sent by electronic means or otherwise on application; or

(c) by any combination of the provisions set out in sub-paragraphs (a) and (b) above;

‘disability living allowance’ means a disability living allowance under section 71 of the Act;

‘dwelling’ has the same meaning in section 3 or 72 of the 1992 Act;

‘earnings’ has the meaning prescribed in section 25 or, as the case may be, 27;

‘the Eileen Trust’ means the charitable trust of that name established on 29th March 1993 out of funds provided by the Secretary of State for the benefit of persons eligible for payment in accordance with its provisions;

‘electronic communication’ has the same meaning as in section 15(1) of the Electronic Communications Act 2000 ;

‘employed earner’ is to be construed in accordance with section 2(1)(a) of the Act and also includes a person who is in receipt of a payment which is payable under any enactment having effect in Northern Ireland and which corresponds to statutory sick pay or statutory maternity pay;

‘Employment and Support Allowance Regulations’ means the Employment and Support Allowance Regulations 2008 and the Employment and Support Regulations 2013 as appropriate;

‘Employment and Support Allowance (Existing Awards) Regulations’ means the Employment and Support Allowance (Transitional Provisions, Housing Benefit and Council Tax Benefit) (Existing Awards) Regulations 2010;

‘the Employment, Skills and Enterprise Scheme’ means a scheme under section 17A (schemes for assisting persons to obtain employment; ‘work for your benefit’ schemes etc.) of the Jobseekers Act 1995 known by that name and provided pursuant to arrangements made by the Secretary of State that is designed to assist applicants to obtain employment, including self-employment, and which may include for any individual work-related activity (including work experience or job search). This also includes schemes covered by The Jobseekers Allowance (Employment, Skills and Enterprise Scheme) Regulations 2011 as amended by the Jobseekers (Back to Work Schemes) Act 2013 – see **‘Back to Work Schemes’**;

‘employment zone’ means an area within Great Britain designated for the purposes of section 60 of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 and 2014 and an **‘employment zone programme’** means a programme established for such an area or areas designed to assist applicants for a jobseeker’s allowance to obtain sustainable employment;

‘employment zone contractor’ means a person who is undertaking the provision of facilities in respect of an employment zone programme on behalf of the Secretary of State for Work and Pensions;

‘enactment’ includes an enactment comprised in, or in an instrument made under, an Act of the Scottish Parliament;

‘extended reduction’ means a payment of council tax reduction payable pursuant to section 60;

‘extended reduction period’ means the period for which an extended reduction is payable in accordance with section 60A or 61A of this scheme;

‘extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits)’ means a payment of council tax reduction payable pursuant to section 61;

‘family’ has the meaning assigned to it by section 137(1) of the Act and Section 9 of this scheme;

‘the Fund’ means moneys made available from time to time by the Secretary of State for the benefit of persons eligible for payment in accordance with the provisions of a scheme established by him on 24th April 1992 or, in Scotland, on 10th April 1992;

‘a guaranteed income payment’ means a payment made under article 15(1)(c) (injury benefits) or 29(1)(a) (death benefits) of the Armed Forces and Reserve Forces (Compensation Scheme) Order 2011;

‘he, him, his’ also refers to the feminine within this scheme

‘housing benefit’ means housing benefit under Part 7 of the Act; ‘the Housing Benefit Regulations’ means the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006;

‘Immigration and Asylum Act’ means the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999;

‘an income-based jobseeker’s allowance’ and **‘a joint-claim jobseeker’s allowance’** have the meanings given by section 1(4) of the Jobseekers Act 1995;

‘income-related employment and support allowance’ means an income-related allowance under Part 1 of the Welfare Reform Act 2007;

‘Income Support Regulations’ means the Income Support (General) Regulations 1987(a);

‘independent hospital’–

(a) in England, means a hospital as defined by section 275 of the National Health Service Act 2006 that is not a health service hospital as defined by that section;

(b) in Wales, has the meaning assigned to it by section 2 of the Care Standards Act 2000; and

(c) in Scotland means an independent health care service as defined by section 10F of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978;

‘the Independent Living Fund (2006)’ means the Trust of that name established by a deed dated 10th April 2006 and made between the Secretary of State for Work and Pensions of the one part and Margaret Rosemary Cooper, Michael Beresford Boyall and Marie Theresa Martin of the other part;

‘invalid carriage or other vehicle’ means a vehicle propelled by a petrol engine or by electric power supplied for use on the road and to be controlled by the occupant;

‘Jobseekers Act’ means the Jobseekers Act 1995; **‘Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations’** means the Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations 1996 and Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations 2013 as appropriate;

‘limited capability for work’ has the meaning given in section 1(4) of the Welfare Reform Act;

‘limited capability for work-related activity’ has the meaning given in section 2(5) of the Welfare Reform Act 2007;

‘the London Bombing Relief Charitable Fund’ means the company limited by guarantee (number 5505072), and registered charity of that name established on 11th July 2005 for the purpose of (amongst other things) relieving sickness, disability or financial need of victims (including families or dependants of victims) of the terrorist attacks carried out in London on 7th July 2005;

‘lone parent’ means a person who has no partner and who is responsible for and a member of the same household as a child or young person;

‘the Macfarlane (Special Payments) Trust’ means the trust of that name, established on 29th January 1990 partly out of funds provided by the Secretary of State, for the benefit of certain persons suffering from haemophilia;

‘the Macfarlane (Special Payments) (No.2) Trust’ means the trust of that name, established on 3rd May 1991 partly out of funds provided by the Secretary of State, for the benefit of certain persons suffering from haemophilia and other beneficiaries;

‘the Macfarlane Trust’ means the charitable trust, established partly out of funds provided by the Secretary of State to the Haemophilia Society, for the relief of poverty or distress among those suffering from haemophilia;

‘main phase employment and support allowance’ means an employment and support allowance where the calculation of the amount payable in respect of the applicant includes a component under section 2(1)(b) or 4(2)(b) of the Welfare Reform Act 2007 except in Part 1 of Schedule 1;

‘the Mandatory Work Activity Scheme’ means a scheme within section 17A (schemes for assisting persons to obtain employment; ‘work for your benefit’ schemes etc.) of the Jobseekers Act 1995 known by that name and provided pursuant to arrangements made by the Secretary of State that is designed to provide work or work related activity for up to 30 hours per week over a period of four consecutive weeks with a view to assisting applicants to improve their prospect of obtaining employment;

‘maternity leave’ means a period during which a woman is absent from work because she is pregnant or has given birth to a child, and at the end of which she has a right to return to work either under the terms of her contract of employment or under Part 8 of the Employment Rights Act 1996;

‘member of a couple’ means a member of a married or unmarried couple;

‘MFET Limited’ means the company limited by guarantee (number 7121661) of that name, established for the purpose in particular of making payments in accordance with arrangements made with the Secretary of State to persons who have acquired HIV as a result of treatment by the NHS with blood or blood products;

‘mobility supplement’ means a supplement to which paragraph 9 of Schedule 4 refers;

‘mover’ means a applicant who changes the dwelling in which the applicant is resident and in respect of which the applicant liable to pay council tax from a dwelling in the area of the appropriate authority to a dwelling in the area of the second authority;

‘net earnings’ means such earnings as are calculated in accordance with section 26;

‘net profit’ means such profit as is calculated in accordance with section 28;

‘the New Deal options’ means the employment programmes specified in regulation 75(1)(a)(ii) of the Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations 1996 and the training scheme specified in regulation 75(1)(b)(ii) of those Regulations;

‘new dwelling’ means, for the purposes of the definition of ‘second authority’ and sections 60C, and 61C the dwelling to which a applicant has moved, or is about to move, in which the applicant is or will be resident;

‘non-dependant’ has the meaning prescribed in section 3;

‘non-dependant deduction’ means a deduction that is to be made under section 58;

‘occasional assistance’ means any payment or provision made by a local authority, the Welsh Ministers or the Scottish Ministers for the purposes of:

(a) meeting, or helping to meet an immediate short-term need;

(i) arising out of an exceptional event or exceptional circumstances, or

(ii) that needs to be met to avoid a risk to the well-being of an individual, and

(b) enabling qualifying individuals to establish or maintain a settled home, and—

(i) ‘local authority’ has the meaning given by section 270(1) of the Local Government Act 1972 ;and

(ii) ‘qualifying individuals’ means individuals who have been, or without the assistance might otherwise be:

(aa) in prison, hospital, an establishment providing residential care or other institution, or

(bb) homeless or otherwise living an unsettled way of life; and ‘local authority’

means a local authority in England within the meaning of the Local Government Act 1972;

‘occupational pension’ means any pension or other periodical payment under an occupational pension scheme but does not include any discretionary payment out of a fund established for relieving hardship in particular cases;

‘occupational pension scheme’ has the same meaning as in section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993

‘ordinary clothing or footwear’ means clothing or footwear for normal daily use, but does not include school uniforms, or clothing or footwear used solely for sporting activities;

‘partner’ in relation to a person, means

(a) where that person is a member of a couple, the other member of that couple;

(b) subject to paragraph (c), where that person is polygamously married to two or more members of his household, any such member to whom he is married; or

(c) where that person is polygamously married and has an award of universal credit with the other party to the earliest marriage that still subsists, that other party to the earliest marriage;

‘paternity leave’ means a period of absence from work on leave by virtue of section 80A or 80B of the Employment Rights Act 1996;

‘payment’ includes part of a payment;

‘pensionable age’ has the meaning given by the rules in paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 to the Pensions Act 1995 as amended by the Public Services Pension Act 2013 and Pensions Act 2014;

‘pension fund holder’ means with respect to a personal pension scheme or an occupational pension scheme, the trustees, managers or scheme administrators, as the case may be, of the scheme concerned;

‘pensioner’ a person who has attained the age at which pension credit can be claimed;

‘person affected’ shall be construed as a person to whom the authority decides is affected by any decision made by the council;

‘person on income support’ means a person in receipt of income support;

‘personal independence payment’ has the meaning given by Part 4 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012 and the Social Security (Personal Independence Payments) 2013;

‘person treated as not being in Great Britain’ has the meaning given by section 7;

'personal pension scheme' means–

- a. a personal pension scheme as defined by section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 as amended by the Public Service Pension Act 2013;
- b. an annuity contractor trust scheme approved under section 620 or 621 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 or a substituted contract within the meaning of section 622(3) or that Act which is treated as having become a registered pension scheme by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(f) of Schedule 36 of the Finance Act 2004¹⁶;
- c. a personal pension scheme approved under Chapter 4 of Part 14 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 which is treated as having become a registered pension scheme by virtue of paragraph 1(1)(g) of Schedule 36 to the Finance Act 2004;
- d. a scheme prescribed in regulation 3 of the Jobseeker's Allowance (Schemes for Assisting Persons to Obtain Employment) Regulations 2013;
- e. Back to Work scheme;

'policy of life insurance' means any instrument by which the payment of money is assured on death (except death by accident only) or the happening of any contingency dependent on human life, or any instrument evidencing a contract which is subject to payment of premiums for a term dependent on human life;

'polygamous marriage' means a marriage to which section 133(1) of the Act refers namely;

- (a) a person is a husband or wife by virtue of a marriage entered into under a law which permits polygamy; and
- (b) either party to the marriage has for the time being any spouse additional to the other party.

'public authority' includes any person certain of whose functions are functions of a public nature;

'qualifying age for state pension credit' means (in accordance with section 1(2)(b) and (6) of the State Pension Credit Act 2002)–

- (a) in the case of a woman, pensionable age; or
- (b) in the case of a man, the age which is pensionable age in the case of a woman born on the same day as the man;

'qualifying contributory benefit' means;

- (a) severe disablement allowance;
- (b) incapacity benefit;
- (c) contributory employment and support allowance;

'qualifying course' means a qualifying course as defined for the purposes of Parts 2 and 4 of the Job Seeker's Allowance Regulations 1996

'qualifying income-related benefit' means

- (a) income support;
- (b) income-based jobseeker's allowance;
- (c) income-related employment and support allowance;

'qualifying person' means a person in respect of whom payment has been made from the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the London Bombings Relief Charitable Fund;

'reduction week' means a period of seven consecutive days beginning with a Monday and ending with a Sunday;

'relative' means a close relative, grandparent, grandchild, uncle, aunt, nephew or niece;

'relevant authority' means an authority administering council tax reduction;

'relevant week' In relation to any particular day, means the week within which the day in question falls;

'remunerative work' has the meaning prescribed in section 6;

'rent' means 'eligible rent' to which regulation 12 of the Housing Benefit Regulations refers less any deductions in respect of non-dependants which fall to be made under regulation 74 (non-dependant deductions) of those Regulations;

'resident' has the meaning it has in Part 1 or 2 of the 1992 Act;

'Scottish basic rate' means the rate of income tax of that name calculated in accordance with section 6A of the Income Tax Act 2007;

¹⁶ As amended by the Finance Act 2014

‘Scottish taxpayer’ has the same meaning as in Chapter 2 of Part 4A of the Scotland Act 1998

‘second adult’ has the meaning given to it in Schedule 2;

‘second authority’ means the authority to which a mover is liable to make payments for the new dwelling;

‘self-employed earner’ is to be construed in accordance with section 2(1)(b) of the Act;

‘self-employment route’ means assistance in pursuing self-employed earner’s employment whilst participating in—

- (a) an employment zone programme;
- (b) a programme provided or other arrangements made pursuant to section 2 of the 1973 Act (functions of the Secretary of State) or section 2 of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990 (functions in relation to training for employment, etc.); or
- (c) the Employment, Skills and Enterprise Scheme;

‘Service User’ references in this scheme to an applicant participating as a service user are to

- a. a person who is being consulted by or on behalf of—
 - (i) the Secretary of State in relation to any of the Secretary of State’s functions in the field of social security or child support or under section 2 of the Employment and Training Act 1973; or
 - (ii) a body which conducts research or undertakes monitoring for the purpose of planning or improving such functions in their capacity as a person affected or potentially affected by the exercise of those functions or the carer of such a person; or
- b. the carer of a person consulted as described in sub-paragraph (a) where the carer is not being consulted as described in that sub-paragraph

‘single applicant’ means an applicant who neither has a partner nor is a lone parent;

‘the Skipton Fund’ means the ex-gratia payment scheme administered by the Skipton Fund Limited, incorporated on 25th March 2004, for the benefit of certain persons suffering from hepatitis C and other persons eligible for payment in accordance with the scheme’s provisions.

‘special account’ means an account as defined for the purposes of Chapter 4A of Part 8 of the Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations or Chapter 5 of Part 10 of the Employment and Support Allowance Regulations;

‘sports award’ means an award made by one of the Sports Councils named in section 23(2) of the National Lottery etc Act 1993 out of sums allocated to it for distribution under that section;

‘the SSCBA’ means the Social Security Contributions and Benefits Act 1992

‘State Pension Credit Act’ means the State Pension Credit Act 2002;

‘student’ has the meaning prescribed in section 43;

‘subsistence allowance’ means an allowance which an employment zone contractor has agreed to pay to a person who is participating in an employment zone programme;

‘support or reduction week’ means a period of 7 consecutive days commencing upon a Monday and ending on a Sunday;

‘the Tax Credits Act’ means the Tax Credits Act 2002;

‘tax year’ means a period beginning with 6th April in one year and ending with 5th April in the next;

‘training allowance’ means an allowance (whether by way of periodical grants or otherwise) payable—

- (a) out of public funds by a Government department or by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, Skills Development Scotland, Scottish Enterprise or Highlands and Islands Enterprise, the Young People’s Learning Agency for England, the Chief Executive of Skills Funding or Welsh Ministers;
- (b) to a person for his maintenance or in respect of a member of his family; and
- (c) for the period, or part of the period, during which he is following a course of training or instruction provided by, or in pursuance of arrangements made with, the department or approved by the department in relation to him or so provided or approved by or on behalf of the Secretary of State, Skills Development Scotland Scottish Enterprise or Highlands and Islands Enterprise or the Welsh Ministers.

It does not include an allowance paid by any Government department to or in respect of a person by reason of the fact that he is following a course of full-time education, other than under arrangements made under section 2 of the 1973 Act or is training as a teacher;

‘the Trusts’ means the Macfarlane Trust, the Macfarlane (Special Payments) Trust and the Macfarlane (Special Payments) (No. 2) Trust;

‘Universal Credit’ means any payment of Universal Credit payable under the Welfare Reform Act 2012, the Universal Credit Regulations 2013, The Universal Credit (Consequential, Supplementary, Incidental and Miscellaneous Provisions) Regulations 2013, Universal Credit (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2013 and the Universal Credit (Transitional Provisions) Regulations 2014;

‘Up-rating Act’ means the Welfare Benefit Up-rating Act 2013, the Welfare Benefits Up-rating Order 2014 and the Welfare Benefits Up-rating Order 2015;

‘voluntary organisation’ means a body, other than a public or local authority, the activities of which are carried on otherwise than for profit;

‘war disablement pension’ means any retired pay or pension or allowance payable in respect of disablement under an instrument specified in section 639(2) of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003;

‘war pension’ means a war disablement pension, a war widow’s pension or a war widower’s pension;

‘war widow’s pension’ means any pension or allowance payable to a woman as a widow under an instrument specified in section 639(2) of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 in respect of the death or disablement of any person;

‘war widower’s pension’ means any pension or allowance payable to a man as a widower or to a surviving civil partner under an instrument specified in section 639(2) of the Income Tax (Earnings and Pensions) Act 2003 in respect of the death or disablement of any person;

‘water charges’ means;

(a) as respects England and Wales, any water and sewerage charges under Chapter 1 of Part 5 of the Water Industry Act 1991,

(b) as respects Scotland, any water and sewerage charges established by Scottish Water under a charges scheme made under section 29A of the Water Industry (Scotland) Act 2002, in so far as such charges are in respect of the dwelling which a person occupies as his home;

‘week’ means a period of seven days beginning with a Monday;

‘Working Tax Credit Regulations’ means the Working Tax Credit (Entitlement and Maximum Rate) Regulations 2002 as amended¹⁷; and

‘young person’ has the meaning prescribed in section 9(1) and in section 142 of the SSCBA.

- 2.2 In this scheme, references to an applicant occupying a dwelling or premises as his home shall be construed in accordance with regulation 7 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006.
- 2.3 In this scheme, where an amount is to be rounded to the nearest penny, a fraction of a penny shall be disregarded if it is less than half a penny and shall otherwise be treated as a whole penny.
- 2.4 For the purpose of this scheme, a person is on an income-based jobseeker’s allowance on any day in respect of which an income-based jobseeker’s allowance is payable to him and on any day;
- (a) in respect of which he satisfies the conditions for entitlement to an income-based jobseeker’s allowance but where the allowance is not paid in accordance with regulation 27A of the Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations or section 19 or 20A or regulations made under section 17A of the Jobseekers Act (circumstances in which a jobseeker’s allowance is not payable); or
- (b) which is a waiting day for the purposes of paragraph 4 of Schedule 1 to that Act and which falls immediately before a day in respect of which an income-based jobseeker’s allowance is payable to him or would be payable to him but for regulation 27A of the Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations or section 19 or 20A or regulations made under

¹⁷ The Working Tax Credit (Entitlement and Maximum Rate) (Amendment) Regulations 2013

- section 17A of that Act;
- (c) in respect of which he is a member of a joint-claim couple for the purposes of the Jobseekers Act and no joint-claim jobseeker's allowance is payable in respect of that couple as a consequence of either member of that couple being subject to sanctions for the purposes of section 20A of that Act;
 - (d) in respect of which an income-based jobseeker's allowance or a joint-claim jobseeker's allowance would be payable but for a restriction imposed pursuant to section 6B, 7, 8 or 9 of the Social Security Fraud Act 2001 (loss of benefit provisions).
- 2.4A For the purposes of this scheme, a person is on an income-related employment and support allowance on any day in respect of which an income-related employment and support allowance is payable to him and on any day;
- (a) in respect of which he satisfies the conditions for entitlement to an income-related employment and support allowance but where the allowance is not paid in accordance with section 18 of the Welfare Reform Act disqualification; or
 - (b) which is a waiting day for the purposes of paragraph 2 of Schedule 2 to that Act and which falls immediately before a day in respect of which an income-related employment and support allowance is payable to him or would be payable to him but for section 18 of that Act.
- 2.5 For the purposes of this scheme, two persons shall be taken to be estranged only if their estrangement constitutes a breakdown of the relationship between them.
- 2.6 In this scheme, references to any person in receipt of state pension credit includes a person who would be in receipt of state pension credit but for regulation 13 of the State Pension Credit Regulations 2002 (small amounts of state pension credit).
- 3.0 Definition of non-dependant**
- 3.1 In this scheme, 'non-dependant' means any person, except someone to whom paragraph 3.2 applies, who normally resides with an applicant or with whom an applicant normally resides.
- 3.2 This paragraph applies to;
- a. any member of the applicant's family;
 - b. if the applicant is polygamously married, any partner of his and any child or young person who is a member of his household and for whom he or one of his partners is responsible;
 - c. a child or young person who is living with the applicant but who is not a member of his household by virtue of section 11(membership of the same household);
 - d. subject to paragraph 3.3, any person who, with the applicant, is jointly and severally liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling for any day under sections 6, 7 or 75 of the 1992 Act (persons liable to pay council tax);
 - e. subject to paragraph 3.3, any person who is liable to make payments on a commercial basis to the applicant or the applicant's partner in respect of the occupation of the dwelling;
 - f. a person who lives with the applicant in order to care for him or a partner of his and who is engaged by a charitable or voluntary organisation which makes a charge to the applicant or his partner for the services provided by that person.
- 3.3 Excepting persons to whom paragraph 3.2 a) to c) and f) refer, a person to whom any of the following sub-paragraphs applies shall be a non-dependant–
- a. a person who resides with the person to whom he is liable to make payments in respect of the dwelling and either;
 - i. that person is a close relative of his or her partner; or
 - ii. the tenancy or other agreement between them is other than on a commercial basis;
 - b. a person whose liability to make payments in respect of the dwelling appears to the authority to have been created to take advantage of the council tax reduction scheme

except someone who was, for any period within the eight weeks prior to the creation of the agreement giving rise to the liability to make such payments, otherwise liable to make payments of rent in respect of the same dwelling;

- c. a person who becomes jointly and severally liable with the applicant for council tax in respect of a dwelling and who was, at any time during the period of eight weeks prior to his becoming so liable, a non-dependant of one or more of the other residents in that dwelling who are so liable for the tax, unless the authority is satisfied that the change giving rise to the new liability was not made to take advantage of the support scheme.

4.0 Requirement to provide a National Insurance Number¹⁸

4.1 No person shall be entitled to support unless the criteria below in 4.2 is satisfied in relation both to the person making the claim and to any other person in respect of whom he is claiming support.

4.2 This subsection is satisfied in relation to a person if–

- a. the claim for support is accompanied by;
 - i. a statement of the person’s national insurance number and information or evidence establishing that that number has been allocated to the person; or
 - ii. information or evidence enabling the national insurance number that has been allocated to the person to be ascertained; or
- b. the person makes an application for a national insurance number to be allocated to him which is accompanied by information or evidence enabling such a number to be so allocated and the application for reduction is accompanied by evidence of the application and information to enable it to be allocated.

4.3 Paragraph 4.2 shall not apply–

- a. in the case of a child or young person in respect of whom council tax reduction is claimed;
- b. to a person who;
 - i. is a person in respect of whom a claim for council tax reduction is made;
 - ii. is subject to immigration control within the meaning of section 115(9)(a) of the Immigration and Asylum Act; and
 - iii. has not previously been allocated a national insurance number.

5.0 Persons who have attained the qualifying age for state pension credit

5.1 This scheme applies to a person if:

- (i) he has not attained the qualifying age for state pension credit; or
- (ii) he has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit and he, or if he has a partner, his partner, is;
 - (a) a person on income support, on income-based jobseeker’s allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance; or
 - (b) a person with an award of universal credit.

6.0 Remunerative work

6.1 Subject to the following provisions of this section, a person shall be treated for the purposes of this scheme as engaged in remunerative work if he is engaged, or, where his hours of work fluctuate, he is engaged on average, for not less than 16 hours a week, in work for which payment is made or which is done in expectation of payment.

¹⁸ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012



- 6.2 Subject to paragraph 6.3, in determining the number of hours for which a person is engaged in work where his hours of work fluctuate, regard shall be had to the average of hours worked over;
- a. if there is a recognisable cycle of work, the period of one complete cycle (including, where the cycle involves periods in which the person does no work, those periods but disregarding any other absences);
 - b. in any other case, the period of 5 weeks immediately prior to that date of claim, or such other length of time as may, in the particular case, enable the person's weekly average hours of work to be determined more accurately,
- 6.3 Where, for the purposes of paragraph 6.2 a), a person's recognisable cycle of work at a school, other educational establishment or other place of employment is one year and includes periods of school holidays or similar vacations during which he does not work, those periods and any other periods not forming part of such holidays or vacations during which he is not required to work shall be disregarded in establishing the average hours for which he is engaged in work.
- 6.4 Where no recognisable cycle has been established in respect of a person's work, regard shall be had to the number of hours or, where those hours will fluctuate, the average of the hours, which he is expected to work in a week.
- 6.5 A person shall be treated as engaged in remunerative work during any period for which he is absent from work referred to in paragraph 6.1 if the absence is either without good cause or by reason of a recognised customary or other holiday.
- 6.6 A person on income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance for more than 3 days in any reduction week shall be treated as not being in remunerative work in that week.
- 6.7 A person shall not be treated as engaged in remunerative work on any day on which the person is on maternity leave, paternity leave or adoption leave, or is absent from work because he is ill.
- 6.8 A person shall not be treated as engaged in remunerative work on any day on which he is engaged in an activity in respect of which;
- a. a sports award has been made, or is to be made, to him; and
 - b. no other payment is made or is expected to be made to him.

7.0 Persons treated as not being in Great Britain and Persons Subject to Immigration Control

Persons treated as not being in Great Britain

- 7.1 Persons treated as not being in Great Britain are a class of person prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 2(9)(b) of Schedule 1A to the 1992 Act and which must not be included in an authority's scheme.
- 7.2 Except where a person falls within paragraph (5) or (6), a person is to be treated as not being in Great Britain if the person is not habitually resident in the United Kingdom, the Channel Islands, the Isle of Man or the Republic of Ireland.
- 7.3 A person must not be treated as habitually resident in the United Kingdom, the Channel Islands, the Isle of Man or the Republic of Ireland unless the person has a right to reside in one of those places.
- 7.4 For the purposes of paragraph (3), a right to reside does not include a right, which exists by virtue of, or in accordance with—
- (a) regulation 13 of the EEA Regulations or Article 6 of Council Directive 2004/38/EC;
 - (aa) regulation 14 of the EEA Regulations, but only in a case where the right exists under that regulation because the person is—
 - (i) a jobseeker for the purpose of the definition of "qualified person" in regulation 6(1) of those Regulations, or

- (ii) a family member (within the meaning of regulation 7 of those Regulations) of such a jobseeker;
 - (ab) Article 45 of the Treaty on the functioning of the European Union (in a case where the person is seeking work in the United Kingdom, the Channel Islands, the Isle of Man or the Republic of Ireland); or
 - (b) regulation 15A(1) of the EEA Regulations, but only in a case where the right exists under that regulation because the applicant satisfies the criteria in paragraph (4A) of that regulation or Article 20 of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union (in a case where the right to reside arises because a British citizen would otherwise be deprived of the genuine enjoyment of their rights as a European Union citizen).
- 7.5 A person falls within this paragraph if the person is—
- (a) a qualified person for the purposes of regulation 6 of the EEA Regulations as a worker or a self-employed person;
 - (b) a family member of a person referred to in sub-paragraph (a) within the meaning of regulation 7(1)(a), (b) or (c) of the EEA Regulations;
 - (c) a person who has a right to reside permanently in the United Kingdom by virtue of regulation 15(1)(c), (d) or (e) of the EEA Regulations;
 - (d) a person recorded by the Secretary of State as a refugee within the definition in Article 1 of the Convention relating to the Status of Refugees done at Geneva on 28th July 1951, as extended by Article 1(2) of the Protocol relating to the Status of Refugees done at New York on 31st January 1967;
 - (e) a person who has been granted, or who is deemed to have been granted, leave outside the rules made under section 3(2) of the Immigration Act 1971¹⁹ where that leave is—
 - (i) discretionary leave to enter or remain in the United Kingdom,
 - (ii) leave to remain under the Destitution Domestic Violence concession which came into effect on 1st April 2012, or
 - (iii) leave deemed to have been granted by virtue of regulation 3 of the Displaced Persons (Temporary Protection) Regulations 2005.
 - (f) a person who has humanitarian protection granted under those rules;
 - (g) a person who is not a person subject to immigration control within the meaning of section 115(9) of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 and who is in the United Kingdom as a result of his deportation, expulsion or other removal by compulsion of law from another country to the United Kingdom;
 - (h) in receipt of income support or on an income-related employment and support allowance;
 - (ha) in receipt of an income-based jobseeker’s allowance and has a right to reside other than a right to reside falling within paragraph (4) or
 - (i) a person who is treated as a worker for the purpose of the definition of “qualified person” in regulation 6(1) of the EEA Regulations pursuant to regulation 5 of the Accession of Croatia (Immigration and Worker Authorisation) Regulations 2013 (right of residence of a Croatian who is an “accession State national subject to worker authorisation”)
- 7.6 A person falls within this paragraph if the person is a Crown servant or member of Her Majesty’s forces posted overseas.
- 7.7 A person mentioned in sub-paragraph (6) is posted overseas if the person is performing overseas the duties of a Crown servant or member of Her Majesty’s forces and was, immediately before the posting or the first of consecutive postings, habitually resident in the United Kingdom.
- 7.8 In this regulation—
 “claim for asylum” has the same meaning as in section 94(1) of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999;
 “Crown servant” means a person holding an office or employment under the Crown;

¹⁹ As amended by the Immigration Act 2014 and the Immigration Act 2014 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2014



“EEA Regulations” means the Immigration (European Economic Area) Regulations 2006; and the The Immigration (European Economic Area) (Amendment) (No. 2) Regulations 2014; and

“Her Majesty’s forces” has the same meaning as in the Armed Forces Act 2006.

Persons subject to immigration control

7.9 Persons subject to immigration control are a class of person prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 2(9)(b) of Schedule 1A to the 1992 Act and which must not be included in an authority’s scheme.

7.10 A person who is a national of a state which has ratified the European Convention on Social and Medical Assistance (done in Paris on 11th December 1953) or a state which has ratified the Council of Europe Social Charter (signed in Turin on 18th October 1961) and who is lawfully present in the United Kingdom is not a person subject to immigration control for the purpose of paragraph 7.9

7.11 “Person subject to immigration control” has the same meaning as in section 115(9) of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999.

7A.0 Transitional provision

7A.1 The above does not apply to a person who, on 31st March 2015—

- (a) is liable to pay council tax at a reduced rate by virtue of a council tax reduction under an authority’s scheme established under section 13A(2) of the Act; and
- (b) is entitled to an income-based jobseeker’s allowance, until the first of the events in paragraph 7A.2 occurs.

7A.2 The events are—

- (a) the person makes a new application for a reduction under an authority’s scheme established under section 13A(2) of the Act; or
- (b) the person ceases to be entitled to an income-based jobseeker’s allowance.

7A.3 In this section “the Act” means the Local Government Finance Act 1992.

8.0 Temporary Absence (period of absence)

8.1 Where a person is absent from the dwelling throughout any day then no support shall be payable

8.2 A person shall not, in relation to any day, which falls within a period of temporary absence from that dwelling, be a prescribed person under paragraph 8.1.

8.3 In paragraph 8.2, a ‘period of temporary absence’ means—

- a. a period of absence within Great Britain not exceeding 13 weeks, beginning with the first whole day on which a person resides in residential accommodation in Great Britain where and for so long as;
 - i. the person resides in that accommodation;
 - ii. the part of the dwelling in which he usually resided is not let or sub-let; and
 - iii. that period of absence does not form part of a longer period of absence from the dwelling of more than 52 weeks,

where he has entered the accommodation for the purpose of ascertaining whether it suits his needs and with the intention of returning to the dwelling if it proves not to suit his needs;

- b. a period of absence not exceeding 13 weeks, beginning with the first whole day of absence from the dwelling, where and for so long as;
 - i. the person intends to return to the dwelling;
 - ii. the part of the dwelling in which he usually resided is not let or sub-let; and
 - iii. that period is unlikely to exceed 13 weeks; and
- c. a period of absence within Great Britain not exceeding 52 weeks, beginning with the first whole day of absence, where and for so long as

- i. the person intends to return to the dwelling;
- ii. the part of the dwelling in which he usually resided is not let or sub-let;
- iii. the person is a person to whom paragraph 8.4 applies; and
- iv. the period of absence is unlikely to exceed 52 weeks or, in exceptional circumstances, is unlikely substantially to exceed that period.

8.3A A person who is temporarily absent from a dwelling he occupies as his home and is absent outside Great Britain shall be treated as occupying that dwelling as his home whilst he is temporarily absent, for a period not exceeding 4 weeks beginning with the first day of that absence from Great Britain, provided that—

- (a) the person intends to return to occupy the dwelling as his home;
- (b) the part of the dwelling normally occupied by the person has not been let or, as the case may be, sub-let; and
- (c) the period of absence is unlikely to exceed 4 weeks.

8.3B A person who is temporarily absent from a dwelling he occupies as his home and is absent outside of Great Britain as a member of the armed forces away on operations, a mariner or a continental shelf worker shall be treated as occupying that dwelling as his home whilst he is temporarily absent, for a period not exceeding 26 weeks beginning with the first day of that absence from Great Britain, provided that—

- (a) the person intends to return to occupy the dwelling as his home;
- (b) the part of the dwelling normally occupied by the person has not been let or, as the case may be, sub-let; and
- (c) the period of absence is unlikely to exceed 26 weeks.

8.3C This paragraph applies where—

- (a) a person is temporarily absent from Great Britain;
- (b) the temporary absence from Great Britain is in connection with the death of the—
 - (i) person's partner or a child or young person for whom he or his partner is responsible;
 - (ii) person's close relative;
 - (iii) close relative of the person's partner; or
 - (iv) close relative of a child or young person for whom the person or their partner is responsible;
- (c) the person intends to return to occupy the dwelling as his home; and
- (d) the part of the dwelling normally occupied by the person has not been let or, as the case may be, sub-let.

8.3D person to whom paragraph (8.3C) applies shall be treated as occupying a dwelling he is absent from as his home whilst he is temporarily absent for a period not exceeding 4 weeks beginning with the first day of that absence from Great Britain.

- v. 8.3E The period of absence in paragraph (8.3D) may be extended by up to 4 further weeks if the relevant authority considers it unreasonable to expect the person to return to Great Britain within the first 4 weeks

8.4 This paragraph applies to a person who is;

- a. detained in custody on remand pending trial or required, as a condition of bail, to reside;
 - i. in a dwelling, other than the dwelling referred to in paragraph 8.1, or
 - ii. in premises approved under section 13 of the Offender Management Act 2007,

- or, detained in custody pending sentence upon conviction;
- b. resident in a hospital or similar institution as a patient;
- c. undergoing, or his partner or his dependent child is undergoing, in Great Britain or elsewhere, medical treatment, or medically approved convalescence, in accommodation other than residential accommodation;
- d. following, in Great Britain or elsewhere, a training course;
- e. undertaking medically approved care of a person residing in Great Britain or elsewhere;
- f. undertaking the care of a child whose parent or guardian is temporarily absent from the dwelling normally occupied by that parent or guardian for the purpose of receiving medically approved care of medical treatment;
- g. in Great Britain, receiving medically approved care provided in accommodation other than residential accommodation;
- h. a student;
- i. receiving care provided in residential accommodation other than a person to whom paragraph 8.3a) applies; or
- j. has left the dwelling he resides in through fear of violence, in that dwelling, or by a person who was formerly a member of the family of the person first mentioned

8.5 This paragraph applies to a person who is:

- a. detained in custody pending sentence upon conviction or under a sentence imposed by a court (other than a person who is detained in hospital under the provisions of the Mental Health Act 1983 (as amended by the Mental Health (Discrimination) Act 2013), or, in Scotland, under the provisions of the Mental Health (Care and Treatment) (Scotland) Act 2003 or the Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1995) or, in Northern Ireland, under Article 4 or 12 of the Mental Health (Northern Ireland) Order 1986; and
- b. on temporary release from detention in accordance with Rules made under the provisions of the Prison Act 1952 or the Prisons (Scotland) Act 1989

8.6 Where paragraph 8.5 applies to a person, then, for any day when he is on temporary release—

- a. if such temporary release was immediately preceded by a period of temporary absence under paragraph 8.3 b) or c), he shall be treated, for the purposes of paragraph 8.1, as if he continues to be absent from the dwelling, despite any return to the dwelling;
- b. for the purposes of paragraph 8.4 a), he shall be treated as if he remains in detention;
- c. If he does not fall within sub-paragraph a), he is not considered to be a person who is liable to pay Council Tax in respect of a dwelling of which he is resident

8.7 In this section;

- ‘medically approved’ means certified by a medical practitioner;
- ‘continental shelf worker’ means a person who is employed, whether under a contract of service or not, in a designated area or a prescribed area in connection with any activity mentioned in section 11(2) of the Petroleum Act 1998
- ‘designated area’ means any area which may from time to time be designated by Order in Council under the Continental Shelf Act 1964 as an area within which the rights of the United Kingdom with respect to the seabed and subsoil and their natural resources may be exercised;

“mariner” means a person who is employed under a contract of service either as a master or member of the crew of any ship or vessel, or in any other capacity on board any ship or vessel, where:

- a) the employment in that capacity is for the purposes of that ship or vessel or its crew or any passengers or cargo or mails carried by the ship or vessel; and
- b) the contract is entered into in the United Kingdom with a view to its performance (in whole or in part) while the ship or vessel is on its voyage
- ‘patient’ means a person who is undergoing medical or other treatment as an in- patient



in any hospital or similar institution; 'residential accommodation' means accommodation which is provided;

- a. in a care home;
- b. in an independent hospital;
- c. in an Abbeyfield Home; or
- d. in an establishment managed or provided by a body incorporated by Royal Charter or constituted by Act of Parliament other than a local social services authority;

- 'prescribed area' means any area over which Norway or any member State (other than the United Kingdom) exercises sovereign rights for the purpose of exploring the seabed and subsoil and exploiting their natural resources, being an area outside the territorial seas of Norway or such member State or any other area which is from time to time specified under section 10(8) of the Petroleum Act 1998
- 'training course' means a course of training or instruction provided wholly or partly by or on behalf of or in pursuance of arrangements made with, or approved by or on behalf of, Skills Development Scotland, Scottish Enterprise, Highlands and Islands Enterprise, a government department or the Secretary of State.

Sections 9 - 11

The family for Council tax reduction purposes

9.0 Membership of a family

- 9.1 Within the support scheme adopted by the Council 'family' means;
- a. a married or unmarried couple;
 - b. married or unmarried couple and a member of the same household for whom one of them is or both are responsible and who is a child or a young person;
 - c. two people of the same sex who are civil partners of each other and are members of the same household (with or without children);
 - d. two people of the same sex who are not civil partners of each other but are living together as if they were civil partners (with or without children),
 - e. and for the purposes of sub-paragraph (d) two people of the same sex are to be regarded as living together as if they were civil partners if, but only if, they would be regarded as living together as husband and wife were they instead two people of the opposite sex;
 - f. except in prescribed circumstances, a person who is not a member of a married or unmarried couple and a member of the same household for whom that person is responsible and who is a child or a young person;

For the purposes of the scheme a child is further defined as a 'child or young person' A 'child' means a person under the age of 16 and a 'Young Person' is someone aged 16 or over but under 20 and who satisfies other conditions. These conditions are:

- they are aged 16, have left 'relevant education' or training, and 31 August following the sixteenth birthday has not yet been passed;
- they are aged 16 or 17, have left education or training, are registered for work, education or training, are not in remunerative work and are still within their 'extension period';
- they are on a course of full-time non-advanced education, or are doing 'approved training', and they began that education or training before reaching the age of 19;
- they have finished a course of full-time non-advanced education, but are enrolled on another such course (other than one provided as a result of their employment);
- they have left 'relevant education' or 'approved training' but have not yet passed their 'terminal date'.

- 9.2 Paragraph 9.1 the definition of child or young person shall not apply to a person who is;
- a. on income support ;
 - b. an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income related employment and support allowance; or be entitled to an award of Universal Credit; or
 - c. a person to whom section 6 of the Children (Leaving Care) Act 2000 applies.
- 9.3 The definition also includes a child or young person in respect of whom there is an entitlement to child benefit but only for the period that Child Benefit is payable

10.0 Circumstances in which a person is to be treated as responsible (or not responsible) for a child or young person.

- 10.1 Subject to the following paragraphs a person shall be treated as responsible for a child or young person who is normally living with him and this includes a child or young person to whom paragraph 9.3 applies
- 10.2 Where a child or young person spends equal amounts of time in different households, or where there is a question as to which household he is living in, the child or young person shall be treated for the purposes of paragraph 9.1 as normally living with;
- a. the person who is receiving child benefit in respect of him; or
 - b. if there is no such person;
 - i. where only one claim for child benefit has been made in respect of him, the person who made that claim; or



ii. in any other case the person who has the primary responsibility for him.

10.3 For the purposes of this scheme a child or young person shall be the responsibility of only one person in any reduction week and any person other than the one treated as responsible for the child or young person under this section shall be treated as not so responsible.

11.0 Circumstances in which a child or young person is to be treated as being or not being a member of the household

11.1 Subject to paragraphs 11.2 and 11.3, the applicant and any partner and, where the applicant or his partner is treated as responsible by virtue of section 10 (circumstances in which a person is to be treated as responsible or not responsible for a child or young person) for a child or young person, that child or young person and any child of that child or young person, shall be treated as members of the same household notwithstanding that any of them is temporarily absent from that household.

11.2 A child or young person shall not be treated as a member of the applicant's household where he is;

- a. placed with the applicant or his partner by a local authority under section 23(2)(a) of the Children Act 1989 or by a voluntary organisation under section 59(1)(a) of that Act, or in Scotland boarded out with the applicant or his partner under a relevant enactment; or
- b. placed, or in Scotland boarded out, with the applicant or his partner prior to adoption; or
- c. placed for adoption with the applicant or his partner in accordance with the Adoption and Children Act 2002²⁰ or the Adoption Agencies (Scotland) Regulations 2009.

11.3 Subject to paragraph 11.4, paragraph 11.1 shall not apply to a child or young person who is not living with the applicant and he—

- a. is being looked after by, or in Scotland is in the care of, a local authority under a relevant enactment; or
- b. has been placed, or in Scotland boarded out, with a person other than the applicant prior to adoption; or
- c. has been placed for adoption in accordance with the Adoption and Children Act 2002 or the Adoption Agencies (Scotland) Regulations 2009; or in accordance with an adoption allowance scheme made under section 71 of the Adoption and Children (Scotland) Act 2007 (adoption allowances schemes).

11.4 The authority shall treat a child or young person to whom paragraph 11.3 a) applies as being a member of the applicant's household in any reduction week where;

- a. that child or young person lives with the applicant for part or all of that reduction week; and
- b. the authority considers that it is responsible to do so taking into account the nature and frequency of that child's or young person's visits.

11.5 In this paragraph 'relevant enactment' means the Army Act 1955, the Air Force Act 1955, the Naval Discipline Act 1957, the Matrimonial Proceedings (Children) Act 1958, the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968, the Family Law Reform Act 1969, the Children and Young Persons Act 1969, the Matrimonial Causes Act 1973, the Children Act 1975, the Domestic Proceedings and Magistrates' Courts Act 1978, the Adoption and Children (Scotland) Act 1978, the Family Law Act 1986, the Children Act 1989, the Children (Scotland) Act 1995 and the Legal Aid, Sentencing and Punishment of Offenders Act 2012 as amended.

²⁰ The Adoption and Children Act 2002 (Commencement No. 12) Order 2014



Sections 12 – 14 & Schedule 1
Applicable Amounts for Council tax reduction purposes

12.0 Applicable amounts

12.1 Subject to sections 13 and 14, an applicant's weekly applicable amount shall be aggregate of such of the following amounts as may apply in his case;

- a. an amount in respect of himself or, if he is a member of a couple, an amount in respect of both of them, determined in accordance with paragraph 1 as the case may be, of Schedule 1 of this scheme;
- b. an amount determined in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 of this scheme in respect of any child or young person who is a member of his family;
- c. if he is a member of a family of which at least one member is a child or young person, an amount determined in accordance with paragraph 3 of Schedule 1 (family premium);
- d. the amount of any premiums which may be applicable to him, determined in accordance with paragraphs 4 to 16 of Schedule 1 of this document (premiums).
- e. the amount of either the
 - i. work-related activity component; or
 - ii. support component which may be applicable to him in accordance with paragraph 17 and 18 of Schedule 1 of this document (the components)
- f. the amount of any transitional addition which may be applicable to him in accordance with paragraph 19 to 20 of Schedule 1 of this scheme (transitional addition).

13.0 Polygamous marriages

13.1 Subject to section 14, where an applicant is a member of a polygamous marriage, his weekly applicable amount shall be the aggregate of such of the following amounts as may apply in his case;

- a. the amount applicable to him and one of his partners determined in accordance with paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 of this scheme as if he and that partner were a couple;
- b. an amount equal to the lowest amount within paragraph 1 of Schedule 1 of this scheme in respect of each of his other partners;
- c. an amount determined in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 of this scheme (applicable amounts) in respect of any child or young person for whom he or a partner of his is responsible and who is a member of the same household;
- d. if he or another partner of the polygamous marriage is responsible for a child or young person who is a member of the same household, the amount specified in paragraph 3 of Schedule 1 of this scheme (family premium);
- e. the amount of any premiums which may be applicable to him determined in accordance with paragraphs 4 to 16 of Schedule 1 of this scheme (premiums).
- f. the amount of either the;
 - i. work-related activity component; or
 - ii. support component which may be applicable to him in accordance with paragraph 17 and 18 of Schedule 1 (the components).
- g. the amount of any transitional addition which may be applicable to him in accordance with paragraphs 19 and 20 of Schedule 1 of this scheme (transitional addition)

14.0 Applicable amount: persons who are not pensioners who have an award of universal credit

14.1 In determining the applicable amount for a week of an applicant—

- a. who has, or
- b. who (jointly with his partner) has,

an award of universal credit, the authority must use the calculation or estimate of the maximum amount of the applicant, or the applicant and his partner jointly (as the case may be), subject to the adjustment described in sub-paragraph (2).



- 14.2 The adjustment referred to in sub-paragraph (1) is to multiply the maximum amount by 12 and divide the product by 52.
- 14.3 In this paragraph “maximum amount” means the maximum amount calculated by the Secretary of State in accordance with section 8(2) of the Welfare Reform Act 2012



Sections 15 – 32 & Schedules 3 & 4

Definition and the treatment of income for Council tax reduction purposes



15.0 Calculation of income and capital of members of applicant's family and of a polygamous marriage

- 15.1 The income and capital of:
- (a) an applicant; and
 - (b) any partner of that applicant,

is to be calculated in accordance with the following provisions.

- 15.2 The income and capital of any partner of the applicant is to be treated as income and capital of the applicant, and in this Part any reference to the applicant applies equally to any partner of that applicant.

- 15.3 Where an applicant or the partner of an applicant is married polygamously to two or more members of his household:
- (a) the applicant must be treated as possessing capital and income belonging to each such member; and
 - (b) the income and capital of that member is to be calculated in accordance with the following provisions of this Part in like manner as for the applicant.

15A.0 Calculation of income and capital: persons who have an award of universal credit

- 15A.1 In determining the income of an applicant
- a. who has, or
 - b. who (jointly with his partner) has,
- an award of universal credit the authority must, subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, use the calculation or estimate of the income of the applicant, or the applicant and his partner jointly (as the case may be), made by the Secretary of State for the purpose of determining the award of universal credit.

- 15A.2 The authority must adjust the amount referred to in sub-paragraph (1) to take account of
- (a) income consisting of the award of universal credit, determined in accordance with subparagraph (3);
 - (b) any sum to be disregarded under paragraphs of Schedule 3 to this scheme (sums to be disregarded in the calculation of earnings: persons who are not pensioners);
 - (c) any sum to be disregarded under paragraphs of Schedule 4 to this scheme (sums to be disregarded in the calculation of income other than earnings: persons who are not pensioners);
 - (d) section 33 (circumstances in which income and capital of non-dependant is to be treated as applicant's), if the authority determines that the provision applies in the applicant's case;
 - (e) such further reduction (if any) as the authority thinks fit under section 13A(1)(c) of the 1992 Act (power of billing authority to reduce amount of council tax payable).

- 15A.3 The amount for the award of universal credit is to be determined by multiplying the amount of the award by 12 and dividing the product by 52.

- 15A.4 sections 33 (income and capital of non-dependant to be treated as applicant's) and 52 and 53 (disregards from income) apply (so far as relevant) for the purpose of determining any adjustments, which fall to be made to the figure for income under sub-paragraph (2)

- 15A.5 In determining the capital of an applicant;
- (a) who has, or
 - (b) who (jointly with his partner) has,
- an award of universal credit, the authority must use the calculation or estimate of the capital of the applicant, or the applicant and his partner jointly (as the case may be), made by the Secretary of State for the purpose of determining that award

16.0 Circumstances in which capital and income of non-dependant is to be treated as applicant's

16.1 Where it appears to the authority that a non-dependant and the applicant have entered into arrangements in order to take advantage of the council tax reduction scheme and the non-dependant has more capital and income than the applicant, that authority shall, except where the applicant is on income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance, treat the applicant as possessing capital and income belonging to that non-dependant, and, in such a case, shall disregard any capital and income which the applicant does possess.

16.2 Where an applicant is treated as possessing capital and income belonging to a non-dependant under paragraph 16.1 the capital and income of that non-dependant shall be calculated in accordance with the following provisions in like manner as for the applicant and any reference to the 'applicant' shall, except where the context otherwise requires, be construed for the purposes of this scheme as if it were a reference to that non-dependant.

17.0 Calculation of income on a weekly basis

17.1 For the purposes of this scheme and in line with regulation 34 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 (disregard to changes in tax, contributions etc.), the income of an applicant shall be calculated on a weekly basis;

- a. by estimating the amount which is likely to be his average weekly income in accordance with this Section and in line with Sections 2, 3, 4 and 5 of Part 6 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006;
- b. by adding to that amount the weekly income calculated in line with regulation 52 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 (calculation to tariff income from capital); and
- c. by then deducting any relevant child care charges to which section 18 (treatment of child care charges) applies from any earnings which form part of the average weekly income or, in a case where the conditions in paragraph 18.2 are met, from those earnings plus whichever credit specified in sub-paragraph (b) of that paragraph is appropriate, up to a maximum deduction in respect of the applicant's family of whichever of the sums specified in paragraph (3) applies in his case.

17.2 The conditions of this paragraph are that;

- a. the applicant's earnings which form part of his average weekly income are less than the lower of either his relevant child care charges or whichever of the deductions specified in paragraph (3) otherwise applies in his case; and
- b. that applicant or, if he is a member of a couple either the applicant or his partner, is in receipt of either working tax credit or child tax credit.

17.3 The maximum deduction to which paragraph 17.1 c) above refers shall be;

- a. where the applicant's family includes only one child in respect of whom relevant child care charges are paid, £175.00 per week.
- b. where the applicant's family includes more than one child in respect of whom relevant child care charges are paid, £300.00 per week.

The amounts stated in this paragraph shall be amended in accordance with the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 (as amended).

17.4 For the purposes of paragraph 17.1 'income' includes capital treated as income under section 31 (capital treated as income) and income, which an applicant is treated as possessing under section 32 (notional income).

18.0 Treatment of child care charges

18.1 This section applies where an applicant is incurring relevant child-care charges and;

- a. is a lone parent and is engaged in remunerative work;
 - b. is a member of a couple both of whom are engaged in remunerative work; or
 - c. is a member of a couple where one member is engaged in remunerative work and the other;
 - i. is incapacitated;
 - ii. is an in-patient in hospital; or
 - iii. is in prison (whether serving a custodial sentence or remanded in custody awaiting trial or sentence).
- 18.2 For the purposes of paragraph 18.1 and subject to paragraph 18.4, a person to whom paragraph 18.3 applies shall be treated as engaged in remunerative work for a period not exceeding 28 weeks during which he—
- a. is paid statutory sick pay;
 - b. is paid short-term incapacity benefit at the lower rate under sections 30A to 30E of the Act;
 - c. is paid an employment and support allowance;
 - d. is paid income support on the grounds of incapacity for work under regulation 4ZA of, and paragraph 7 or 14 of Schedule 1B to, the Income Support Regulations 1987; or
 - e. is credited with earnings on the grounds of incapacity for work or limited capability for work under regulation 8B of the Social Security (Credits) Regulations 1975.
- 18.3 This paragraph applies to a person who was engaged in remunerative work immediately before
- a. the first day of the period in respect of which he was first paid statutory sick pay, short-term incapacity benefit, an employment and support allowance or income support on the grounds of incapacity for work; or
 - b. the first day of the period in respect of which earnings are credited, as the case may be.
- 18.4 In a case to which paragraph 18.2 d) or e) applies, the period of 28 weeks begins on the day on which the person is first paid income support or on the first day of the period in respect of which earnings are credited, as the case may be.
- 18.5 Relevant child care charges are those charges for care to which paragraphs 18.6 and 18.7 apply, and shall be calculated on a weekly basis in accordance with paragraph 18.10.
- 18.6 The charges are paid by the applicant for care, which is provided
- a. in the case of any child of the applicant's family who is not disabled, in respect of the period beginning on that child's date of birth and ending on the day preceding the first Monday in September following that child's fifteenth birthday; or
 - b. in the case of any child of the applicant's family who is disabled, in respect of the period beginning on that person's date of birth and ending on the day preceding the first Monday in September following that person's sixteenth birthday.
- 18.7 The charges are paid for care, which is provided by one, or more of the care providers listed in paragraph 18.8 and are not paid—
- a. in respect of the child's compulsory education;
 - b. by an applicant to a partner or by a partner to an applicant in respect of any child for whom either or any of them is responsible in accordance with section 10 (circumstances in which a person is treated as responsible or not responsible for another); or
 - c. in respect of care provided by a relative of the child wholly or mainly in the child's home.
- 18.8 The care to which paragraph 18.7 refers may be provided;
- a. out of school hours, by a school on school premises or by a local authority;
 - i. for children who are not disabled in respect of the period beginning on their eight birthday and ending on the day preceding the first Monday in September following their fifteenth birthday; or
 - ii. for children who are disabled in respect of the period beginning on their eight birthday and ending on the day preceding the first Monday in September

- following their sixteenth birthday; or
- b. by a child care provider approved in accordance with by the Tax Credit (New Category of Child Care Provider) Regulations 1999;
 - c. by persons registered under Part 2 of the Children and Families (Wales) Measure 2010; or
 - d. by a person who is excepted from registration under Part 2 of the Children and Families (Wales) Measure 2010 because the child care that person provides is in a school or establishment referred to in article 11, 12 or 14 of the Child Minding and Day Care Exceptions (Wales) order 2010; or
 - e. by;
 - i. persons registered under section 59(1) of the Public Services Reform Scotland Act 2010;
 - or
 - ii. local authorities registered under section 8(1) of that Act, where the care provided is child minding or daycare within the meaning of that Act; or
 - f. by a person prescribed in regulations made pursuant to section 12(4) of the Tax Credits Act 2002 or
 - g. by a person who is registered under Chapter 2 or 3 of Part 3 of the Childcare Act 2006; or
 - h. by any of the schools mentioned in section 34(2) of the Childcare Act 2006 in circumstances where the requirement to register under Chapter 2 of Part 3 of that Act does not apply by virtue of section 34(2) of that Act; or
 - i. by any of the schools mentioned in section 53(2) of the Childcare Act 2006 in circumstances where the requirement to register under Chapter 3 of Part 3 of that Act does not apply by virtue of section 53(2) of that Act; or
 - j. by any of the establishments mentioned in section 18(5) of the Childcare Act 2006 in circumstances where the care is not included in the meaning of 'childcare' for the purposes of Part 1 and Part 3 of that Act by virtue of that subsection; or
 - k. by a foster parent or kinship carer under the Fostering Services Regulations 2002, the Fostering Services (Wales) Regulations 2003 or the Looked After Children (Scotland) Regulations 2009 in relation to a child other than one whom the foster parent is fostering or kinship carer is looking after; or
 - l. by a domiciliary care worker under the Domiciliary Care Agencies Regulations 2002 or the Domiciliary Care Agencies (Wales) Regulations 2004; or
 - m. by a person who is not a relative of the child wholly or mainly in the child's home.

18.9 In paragraphs 18.6 and 18.8 a), 'the first Monday in September' means the Monday which first occurs in the month of September in any year.

18.10 Relevant child care charges shall be estimated over such period, not exceeding a year, as is appropriate in order that the average weekly charge may be estimated accurately having regard to information as to the amount of that charge provided by the child minder or person providing the care.

18.11 For the purposes of paragraph 18.1 c) the other member of a couple is incapacitated where

- a. the applicant's applicable amount includes a disability premium on account of the other member's incapacity or the support component or the work-related activity component on account of his having limited capability for work
- b. the applicant's applicable amount would include a disability premium on account of the other member's incapacity but for that other member being treated as capable of work by virtue of a determination made in accordance with regulation made under section 171E of the Act;
- c. the applicant's applicable amount would include the support component or the work-related activity component on account of the other member having limited capability for work but for that other member being treated as not having limited capability for work by virtue of a determination made in accordance with the Employment and Support

- d. Allowance Regulations 2008 or 2013 as appropriate; the applicant (within the meaning of this scheme) is, or is treated as, incapable of work and has been so incapable, or has been so treated as incapable, of work in accordance with the provisions of, and regulations made under, Part 12A of the Act (incapacity for work) for a continuous period of not less than 196 days; and for this purpose any two or more separate periods separated by a break of not more than 56 days shall be treated as one continuous period;
- e. the applicant (within the meaning of this scheme) has, or is treated as having, limited capability for work and has had, or been treated as having, limited capability for work in accordance with the Employment and Support Allowance Regulations for a continuous period of not less than 196 days and for this purpose any two or more separate periods separated by a break of not more than 84 days must be treated as one continuous period;
- f. there is payable in respect of him one or more of the following pensions or allowances—
 - i. long-term incapacity benefit or short-term incapacity benefit at the higher rate under Schedule 4 to the Act;
 - ii. attendance allowance under section 64 of the Act;
 - iii. severe disablement allowance under section 68 of the Act;
 - iv. disability living allowance under section 71 of the Act;
 - v. personal independence payment under the Welfare Reform Act 2012;
 - vi. an AFIP;
 - vii. increase of disablement pension under section 104 of the Act;
 - viii. a pension increase paid as part of a war disablement pension or under an industrial injuries scheme which is analogous to an allowance or increase of disablement pension under head (ii), (iv) or (v) above;
 - ix. main phase employment and support allowance;
- g. a pension or allowance to which head (ii), (iv), (v) or (vi) of sub-paragraph (f) above refers was payable on account of his incapacity but has ceased to be payable in consequence of his becoming a patient, which in this section shall mean a person (other than a person who is serving a sentence of imprisonment or detention in a youth custody institution) who is regarded as receiving free in-patient treatment within the meaning of social security (Hospital In-Patients) Regulations 2005.
- h. an AFIP would be payable to that person but for any suspension of payment in accordance with any terms of the armed and reserve forces compensation scheme which allow for a suspension because a person is undergoing medical treatment in a hospital or similar institution;
- i. paragraphs (f) or (g) would apply to him if the legislative provisions referred to in those sub-paragraphs were provisions under any corresponding enactment having effect in Northern Ireland; or
- j. he has an invalid carriage or other vehicle provided to him by the Secretary of State under section 5(2)(a) of and Schedule 2 to the National Health Service Act 1977 or under section 46 of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978 or provided by the Department of Health, Social Services and Public Safety in Northern Ireland under Article 30(1) of the Health and Personal Social Services (Northern Ireland) Order 1972.

18.12 For the purposes of paragraph 18.11 once paragraph 18.11d) applies to the applicant, if he then ceases, for a period of 56 days or less, to be incapable, or to be treated as incapable, of work, that paragraph shall, on his again becoming so incapable, or so treated as incapable, of work at the end of that period, immediately thereafter apply to him for so long as he remains incapable, or is treated as remaining incapable, of work.

18.12A For the purposes of paragraph 18.11, once paragraph 18.11e) applies to the applicant, if he then ceases, for a period of 84 days or less, to have, or to be treated as having, limited capability for work, that paragraph is, on his again having, or being treated as having, limited capability for work at the end of that period, immediately thereafter apply to him for so long as he has, or is treated as having, limited capability for work.

- 18.13 For the purposes of paragraphs 18.6 and 18.8 a), a person is disabled if he is a person–
- a. in respect of whom disability living allowance or personal independence payment is payable, or has ceased to be payable solely because he is a patient;
 - b. who is registered as blind in a register compiled under section 29 of the National Assistance Act 1948 (welfare services) or, in Scotland, has been certified as blind and in consequence he is registered as blind in a register maintained by or on behalf of a council constituted under section 2 of the Local Government (Scotland) Act 1994; or
 - c. who ceased to be registered as blind in such a register within the period beginning 28 weeks before the first Monday in September following that person’s fifteenth birthday and ending on the day preceding that person’s sixteenth birthday.
- 18.14 For the purposes of paragraph 18.1 a woman on maternity leave, paternity leave or adoption leave shall be treated as if she is engaged in remunerative work for the period specified in paragraph 18.15 (‘the relevant period’) provided that–
- a. in the week before the period of maternity leave, paternity leave or shared parental leave effective from 5/4/2015 or adoption leave began she was in remunerative work or adoption leave began she was in remunerative work;
 - b. the applicant is incurring relevant child care charges within the meaning of paragraph 18.5; and
 - c. she is entitled to either statutory maternity pay under section 164 of the Act, statutory paternity pay by virtue of section 171ZA or 171ZB of the Act statutory adoption pay by of section 171ZL of the Act, maternity allowance under section 35 of the Act or qualifying support.
- 18.15 For the purposes of paragraph 18.14 the relevant period shall begin on the day on which the person’s maternity, paternity leave or adoption leave commences and shall end on–
- a. the date that leave ends;
 - b. if no child care element of working tax credit is in payment on the date that entitlement to maternity allowance, qualifying support, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay or statutory adoption pay ends, the date that entitlement ends; or
 - c. if a child care element of working tax credit is in payment on the date that entitlement to maternity allowance or qualifying support, statutory maternity pay or statutory adoption pay ends, the date that entitlement to that award of the child care element of the working tax credits ends.
- whichever shall occur first.
- 18.16 In paragraphs 18.14 and 18.15
- a. **‘qualifying support’** means income support to which that person is entitled by virtue of paragraph 14B of Schedule 1B to the Income Support Regulations 1987; and
 - b. **‘child care element’** of working tax credit means the element of working tax credit prescribed under section 12 of the Tax Credits Act (child care element) 2002.
- 18.17 In this section ‘applicant’ does not include an applicant;
- a. who has, or
 - b. who (jointly with his partner) has,
- an award of universal credit
- 19.0 Average weekly earnings of employed earners**
- 19.1 Where an applicant’s income consists of earnings from employment as an employed earner his average weekly earnings shall be estimated by reference to his earnings from that employment–
- a. over a period immediately preceding the reduction week in which the claim is made or treated as made and being a period of
 - i. 5 weeks, if he is paid weekly; or
 - ii. 2 months, if he is paid monthly; or
 - b. whether or not sub-paragraph 19.1a i) or ii) applies, where an applicant’s earnings fluctuate,



over such other period preceding the reduction week in which the claim is made or treated as made as may, in any particular case, enable his average weekly earnings to be estimated more accurately.

19.2 Where the applicant has been in his employment for less than the period specified in paragraph 19.1 a)(i) or (ii)

- a. if he has received any earnings for the period that he has been in that employment and those earnings are likely to represent his average weekly earnings from that employment his average weekly earnings shall be estimated by reference to those earnings;
- b. in any other case, the authority shall require the applicant's employer to furnish an estimate of the applicant's likely weekly earnings over such period as the authority may require and the applicant's average weekly earnings shall be estimated by reference to that estimate.

19.3 Where the amount of an applicant's earnings changes during an award the authority shall estimate his average weekly earnings by reference to his likely earnings from the employment over such period as is appropriate in order that his average weekly earnings may be estimated accurately but the length of the period shall not in any case exceed 52 weeks.

19.4 For the purposes of this section the applicant's earnings shall be calculated in accordance with sections 25 and 26

20.0 Average weekly earnings of self-employed earners

20.1 Where an applicant's income consists of earnings from employment as a self-employed earner his average weekly earnings shall be estimated by reference to his earnings from that employment over such period as is appropriate in order that his average weekly earnings may be estimated accurately but the length of the period shall not in any case exceed a year.

20.2 For the purposes of this section the applicant's earnings shall be calculated in accordance with section 27 to 29 of this scheme

21.0 Average weekly income other than earnings

21.1 An applicant's income which does not consist of earnings shall, except where paragraph 18.2 applies, be estimated over such period as is appropriate in order that his average weekly income may be estimated accurately but the length of the period shall not in any case exceed 52 weeks; and nothing in this paragraph shall authorise the authority to disregard any such income other than that specified in Schedule 4 of this scheme

21.2 The period over which any benefit under the benefit Acts is to be taken into account shall be the period in respect of which that support is payable.

21.3 For the purposes of this section income other than earnings shall be calculated in accordance with paragraphs 30 to 32 of this scheme

22.0 Calculation of average weekly income from tax credits

22.1 This section applies where an applicant receives a tax credit.

22.2 Where this section applies, the period over which a tax credit is to be taken into account shall be the period set out in paragraph 22.3

22.3 Where the instalment in respect of which payment of a tax credit is made is;

- a. a daily instalment, the period is 1 day, being the day in respect of which the instalment is paid;



- b. a weekly instalment, the period is 7 days, ending on the day on which the instalment is due to be paid;
- c. a two weekly instalment, the period is 14 days, commencing 6 days before the day on which the instalment is due to be paid;
- d. a four weekly instalment, the period is 28 days, ending on the day on which the instalment is due to be paid.

22.4 For the purposes of this section 'tax credit' means child tax credit or working tax credit.

23.0 Calculation of weekly income

23.1 For the purposes of sections 19 (average weekly earnings of employed earners), 21 (average weekly income other than earnings) and 22 (calculation of average weekly income from tax credits), where the period in respect of which a payment is made;

- a. does not exceed a week, the weekly amount shall be the amount of that payment;
- b. exceeds a week, the weekly amount shall be determined—
 - i. in a case where that period is a month, by multiplying the amount of the payment by 12 and dividing the product by 52;
 - ii. in any other case, by dividing the amount of the payment by the number equal to the number of days in the period to which it relates and multiplying the product by 7.

23.2 For the purpose of section 20 (average weekly earnings of self-employed earners) the weekly amount of earnings of an applicant shall be determined by dividing his earnings over the assessment period by the number equal to the number of days in that period and multiplying the product by 7.

24.0 Disregard of changes in tax, contributions etc.

24.1 In calculating the applicant's income the appropriate authority may disregard any legislative change

- a. in the basic or other rates of income tax;
- b. in the amount of any personal tax relief;
- c. in the rates of national insurance contributions payable under the Act or in the lower earnings limit or upper earnings limit for Class 1 contributions under the Act, the lower or upper limits applicable to Class 4 contributions under the Act or the amount specified in section 11(4) of the Act (small profits threshold in relation to Class 2 contributions);
- d. in the amount of tax payable as a result of an increase in the weekly rate of Category A, B, C or D retirement pension or any addition thereto or any graduated pension payable under the Act;
- e. in the maximum rate of child tax credit or working tax credit,

for a period not exceeding 30 reduction weeks beginning with the reduction week immediately following the date from which the change is effective.

25.0 Earnings of employed earners

25.1 Subject to paragraph 25.2, 'earnings' means in the case of employment as an employed earner, any remuneration or profit derived from that employment and includes—

- a. any bonus or commission;
- b. any payment in lieu of remuneration except any periodic sum paid to an applicant on account of the termination of his employment by reason of redundancy;
- c. any payment in lieu of notice or any lump sum payment intended as compensation for the loss of employment but only in so far as it represents loss of income;
- d. any holiday pay except any payable more than 4 weeks after termination or interruption of the employment;
- e. any payment by way of a retainer;

- f. any payment made by the applicant's employer in respect of expenses not wholly, exclusively and necessarily incurred in the performance of the duties of the employment, including any payment made by the applicant's employer in respect of—
- g. (i) travelling expenses incurred by the applicant between his home and his place of employment;
- (ii) expenses incurred by the applicant under arrangements made for the care of a member of his family owing to the applicant's absence from home;
- h. any award of compensation made under section 112(4) or 117(3)(a) of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (remedies and compensation for unfair dismissal);
- i. any payment or remuneration made under section 28, 34, 64, 68 or 70 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (right to guarantee payments, remuneration on suspension on medical or maternity grounds, complaints to employment tribunals);
- j. any such sum as is referred to in section 112 of the Act (certain sums to be earnings for social security purposes);
- k. any statutory sick pay, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay, shared parental pay or statutory adoption pay, or a corresponding payment under any enactment having effect in Northern Ireland;
- l. any remuneration paid by or on behalf of an employer to the applicant who for the time being is on maternity leave, paternity leave, shared parental pay or adoption leave or is absent from work because he is ill;
- m. the amount of any payment by way of a non-cash voucher which has been taken into account in the computation of a person's earnings in accordance with Part 5 of Schedule 3 to the Social Security (Contributions) Regulations 2001 as amended²¹.

25.2 Earnings shall not include—

- a. subject to paragraph 25.3, any payment in kind;
- b. any payment in respect of expenses wholly, exclusively and necessarily incurred in the performance of the duties of employment;
- c. any occupational pension
- d. any payment in respect of expenses arising out of an applicant participating as a service user.

25.3 Paragraph 25.2 a) shall not apply in respect of any non-cash voucher referred to in paragraph 25.1 m)

26.0 Calculation of net earnings of employed earners

26.1 For the purposes of section 19 (average weekly earnings of employed earners), the earnings of an applicant derived or likely to be derived from employment as an employed earner to be taken into account shall, subject to paragraph 26.2, be his net earnings.

26.2 There shall be disregarded from an applicant's net earnings, any sum, where applicable, specified in paragraphs 1 to 14 of Schedule 3.

26.3 For the purposes of paragraph 26.1 net earnings shall, except where paragraph 26.6 applies, be calculated by taking into account the gross earnings of the applicant from that employment over the assessment period, less;

- a. any amount deducted from those earnings by way of
 - i) income tax;
 - ii) primary Class 1 contributions under the Act;
- b. one-half of any sum paid by the applicant by way of a contribution towards an occupational pension scheme;
- c. one-half of the amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 26.5 in respect of any qualifying contribution payable by the applicant; and

²¹ Social Security (Contributions)(Amendment) Regulations 2013, Social Security (Contributions)(Amendment No.2) Regulations 2013 and Social Security (Contributions)(Amendment No.2) Regulations 2013

- d. where those earnings include a payment which is payable under any enactment having effect in Northern Ireland and which corresponds to statutory sick pay, statutory maternity pay, statutory paternity pay or statutory adoption pay, any amount deducted for those earnings by way of any contributions which are payable under any enactment having effect in Northern Ireland and which correspond to primary Class 1 contributions under the Act.

26.4 In this section ‘qualifying contribution’ means any sum which is payable periodically as a contribution towards a personal pension scheme.

26.5 The amount in respect of any qualifying contribution shall be calculated by multiplying the daily amount of the qualifying contribution by the number equal to the number of days in the assessment period; and for the purposes of this section the daily amount of the qualifying contribution shall be determined—

- a. where the qualifying contribution is payable monthly, by multiplying the amount of the qualifying contribution by 12 and dividing the product by 365;
- b. in any other case, by dividing the amount of the qualifying contribution by the number equal to the number of days in the period to which the qualifying contribution relates.

26.6 Where the earnings of an applicant are estimated under sub-paragraph (b) of paragraph 2) of the section 19 (average weekly earnings of employment earners), his net earnings shall be calculated by taking into account those earnings over the assessment period, less—

- a. an amount in respect of income tax equivalent to an amount calculated by applying to those earnings the basic rate or in the case of a Scottish taxpayer, the Scottish basic rate of tax applicable to the assessment period less only the personal relief to which the applicant is entitled under sections 257(1) of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988(personal allowances) as is appropriate to his circumstances but, if the assessment period is less than a year, the earnings to which the basic rate or in the case of a Scottish taxpayer, the Scottish basic rate of tax is to be applied and the amount of the personal relief deductible under this sub-paragraph shall be calculated on a pro rata basis;
- b. an amount equivalent to the amount of the primary Class 1 contributions that would be payable by him under the Act in respect of those earnings if such contributions were payable; and
- c. one-half of any sum which would be payable by the applicant by way of a contribution towards an occupational or personal pension scheme, if the earnings so estimated were actual earnings.

27.0 Earnings of self-employed earners

27.1 Subject to paragraph 27.2, ‘earnings’, in the case of employment as a self- employed earner, means the gross income of the employment plus any allowance paid under section 2 of the 1973 Act or section 2 of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990 to the applicant for the purpose of assisting him in carrying on his business unless at the date of claim the allowance has been terminated.

27.2 ‘Earnings’ shall not include any payment to which paragraph 27 or 28 of Schedule 4 refers (payments in respect of a person accommodated with the applicant under arrangements made by a local authority or voluntary organisation and payments made to the applicant by a health authority, local authority or voluntary organisation in respect of persons temporarily in the applicant’s care) nor shall it include any sports award.

27.3 This paragraph applies to—

- a. royalties or other sums paid as a consideration for the use of, or the right to use, any copyright, design, patent or trade mark; or
- b. any payment in respect of any—
 - (i) book registered under the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982; or

(ii) work made under any international public lending right scheme that is analogous to the Public Lending Right Scheme 1982, where the applicant is the first owner of the copyright, design, patent or trade mark, or an original contributor to the book of work concerned.

- 27.4 Where the applicant's earnings consist of any items to which paragraph 27.3 applies, those earnings shall be taken into account over a period equal to such number of weeks as is equal to the number obtained (and any fraction is to be treated as a corresponding fraction of a week) by dividing the earnings by
- (a) the amount of the reduction under this scheme which would be payable had the payment not been made, plus
 - (b) an amount equal to the total of the sums which would fall to be disregarded from the payment under Schedule 3 (sums to be disregarded in the calculation of earnings) as appropriate in the applicant's case.

28.0 Calculation of net profit of self-employed earners

- 28.1 For the purposes of section 20 (average weekly earnings of self-employed earners) the earnings of an applicant to be taken into account shall be
- a. in the case of a self-employed earner who is engaged in employment on his own account, the net profit derived from that employment;
 - b. in the case of a self-employed earner whose employment is carried on in partnership or is that of a share fisherman within the meaning of the Social Security (Mariners' Benefits) Regulations 1975, his share of the net profit derived from that employment, less—
 - i. an amount in respect of income tax and of national insurance contributions payable under the Act calculated in accordance with section 29 (deduction of tax and contributions for self-employed earners); and
 - ii. one-half of the amount calculated in accordance with paragraph (11) in respect of any qualifying premium.
- 28.2 There shall be disregarded from an applicant's net profit, any sum, where applicable, specified in paragraph 1 to 14 of Schedule 3.
- 28.3 For the purposes of paragraph 28.1 a) the net profit of the employment must, except where paragraph 28.9 applies, be calculated by taking into account the earnings for the employment over the assessment period less
- a. subject to paragraphs 28.5 to 28.7, any expenses wholly and exclusively incurred in that period for the purposes of that employment;
 - b. an amount in respect of;
 - (i) income tax, and
 - (ii) national insurance contributions payable under the Act, calculated in accordance with section 29 (deduction of tax and contributions for self-employed earners); and
 - c. one-half of the amount calculated in accordance with paragraph (28.11) in respect of any qualifying premium.
- 28.4 For the purposes of paragraph 28.1b) the net profit of the employment shall be calculated by taking into account the earnings of the employment over the assessment period less, subject to paragraphs 28.5 to 28.7, any expenses wholly and exclusively incurred in that period for the purposes of the employment. Where the claimant has been self-employed for more than one year and where insufficient information is provided to the authority in respect of self employed earnings, the authority may calculate the earnings by reference to the national minimum wage²² and the number of declared hours worked.
- 28.5 Subject to paragraph 28.6 no deduction shall be made under paragraph 28.3 a) or 28.4, in

²² Minimum wage as defined by the Minimum Wage Act 1998

respect of–

- a. any capital expenditure;
- b. the depreciation of any capital asset;
- c. any sum employed or intended to be employed in the setting up or expansion of the employment;
- d. any loss incurred before the beginning of the assessment period;
- e. the repayment of capital on any loan taken out for the purposes of the employment;
- f. any expenses incurred in providing business entertainment, and
- g. any debts, except bad debts proved to be such, but this sub-paragraph shall not apply to any expenses incurred in the recovery of a debt.

28.6 A deduction shall be made under paragraph 28.3 a) or 28.4 in respect of the repayment of capital on any loan used for–

- a. the replacement in the course of business of equipment or machinery; and
- b. the repair of an existing business asset except to the extent that any sum is payable under an insurance policy for its repair.

28.7 The authority shall refuse to make deduction in respect of any expenses under paragraph 28.3 a. or 28.4 where it is not satisfied given the nature and the amount of the expense that it has been reasonably incurred.

28.8 For the avoidance of doubt–

- a. deduction shall not be made under paragraph 28.3 a) or 28.4 in respect of any sum unless it has been expended for the purposes of the business;
- b. a deduction shall be made thereunder in respect of–
 - i. the excess of any value added tax paid over value added tax received in the assessment period;
 - ii. any income expended in the repair of an existing business asset except to the extent that any sum is payable under an insurance policy for its repair;
 - iii. any payment of interest on a loan taken out for the purposes of the employment

28.9 Where an applicant is engaged in employment, as a child minder the net profit of the employment shall be one-third of the earnings of that employment, less an amount in respect of

- a. income tax; and
- b. national insurance contributions payable under the Act, calculated in accordance with section 29 (deduction of tax and contributions for self-employed earners); and
- c. one-half of the amount calculated in accordance with paragraph 28.1 in respect of any qualifying contribution

28.10 For the avoidance of doubt where an applicant is engaged in employment as a self-employed earner and he is also engaged in one or more other employments as a self-employed or employed earner any loss incurred in any one of his employments shall not be offset against his earnings in any other of his employments.

28.11 The amount in respect of any qualifying premium shall be calculated by multiplying the daily amount of the qualifying premium by the number equal to the number of days in the assessment period; and for the purposes of this section the daily amount of the qualifying premium shall be determined

- a. where the qualifying premium is payable monthly, by multiplying the amount of the qualifying premium by 12 and divided the product by 365;
- b. in any other case, by dividing the amount of the qualifying premium by the number equal to the number of days in the period to which the qualifying premium relates.

28.12 In this section, ‘qualifying premium’ means any premium which is payable periodically in respect of a personal pension scheme and is so payable on or after the date of claim.

29.0 Deduction of tax and contributions of self-employed earners

- 29.1 The amount to be deducted in respect of income tax under section 28.1b i), 28.3 b) i) or 28.9 a) i) (calculation of net profit of self-employed earners) shall be calculated on the basis of the amount of chargeable income and as if that income were assessable to income tax at the basic rate or in the case of a Scottish taxpayer, the Scottish basic rate of tax applicable to the assessment period less only the personal relief to which the applicant is entitled under section 257(1) of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (personal allowances) as is appropriate to his circumstances; but, if the assessment period is less than a year, the earnings to which the basic rate or in the case of a Scottish taxpayer, the Scottish basic rate of tax is to be applied and the amount of the personal reliefs deductible under this paragraph shall be calculated on a pro rata basis.
- 29.2 The amount to be deducted in respect of national insurance contributions under paragraphs 28.1 1 b)(i); 28.3 b) ii) or 28.9 a shall be the total of—
- a. the amount of Class 2 contributions payable under section 11(1) or, as the case may be, 11(3) of the Act at the rate applicable to the assessment period except where the applicant's chargeable income is less than the amount specified in section 11(4) of the Act (small profits threshold) for the tax year applicable to the assessment period; but if the assessment period is less than a year, the amount specified for that tax year shall be reduced pro rata; and
 - b. the amount of Class 4 contributions (if any) which would be payable under section 15 of the Act (Class 4 contributions recoverable under the Income Tax Acts) at the percentage rate applicable to the assessment period on so much of the chargeable income as exceeds the lower limit but does not exceed the upper limit of profits and gains applicable for the tax year applicable to the assessment period; but if the assessment period is less than a year, those limits shall be reduced pro rata.
- 29.3 In this section 'chargeable income' means—
- a. except where sub-paragraph (b) applies, the earnings derived from the employment less any expenses deducted under paragraph 28.3(a) or, as the case may be, 28.4 of section 28;
 - b. in the case of employment as a child minder, one-third of the earnings of that employment.

30.0 Calculation of income other than earnings

- 30.1 For the purposes of section 21 (average weekly income other than earnings), the income of an applicant which does not consist of earnings to be taken into account shall, subject to paragraphs 27.2 to 27.4, be his gross income and any capital treated as income under section 31 (capital treated as income).
- 30.2 There is to be disregarded from the calculation of an applicant's gross income under paragraph 30.2, any sum, where applicable, specified in Schedule 4.
- 30.3 Where the payment of any benefit under the benefit Acts is subject to any deduction by way of recovery the amount to be taken into account under paragraph 30.1 shall be the gross amount payable.
- 30.4 Where the applicant or, where he is a member of a couple, his partner is receiving a contributory employment and support allowance and that benefit has been reduced under regulation 63 of the Employment and Support Allowance Regulations 2008, the amount of that benefit to be taken into account is the amount as if it had not been reduced.
- 30.5 Where an award of any working tax credit or child tax credit under the Tax Credits Act 2002 is subject to a deduction by way of recovery of an overpayment of working tax credit or child tax



credit which arose in a previous tax year the amount to be taken into account under paragraph 27.1 shall be the amount of working tax credit or child tax credit awarded less the amount of that deduction.

30.6 In paragraph 30.5 'tax year' means a period beginning with 6th April in one year and ending with 5th April in the next.

30.7 Paragraph 30.8 and 30.9 apply where a relevant payment has been made to a person in an academic year; and that person abandons, or is dismissed from, his course of study before the payment to him of the final instalment of the relevant payment.

30.8 Where a relevant payment is made quarterly, the amount of a relevant payment to be taken into account for the assessment period for the purposes of paragraph 30.1 in respect of a person to whom paragraph 30.7 applies, shall be calculated by applying the formula—

$$\frac{A - (B \times C)}{D}$$

D

Where

A = the total amount of the relevant payment which that person would have received had he remained a student until the last day of the academic term in which he abandoned, or was dismissed from, his course, less any deduction under paragraph 51.5

B = the number of reduction weeks from the reduction week immediately following that which includes the first day of that academic year to the reduction week which includes the day on which the person abandoned, or was dismissed from, his course;

C = the weekly amount of the relevant payment, before the application of the £10 disregard, which would have been taken into account as income under paragraph 51.2 had the person not abandoned or been dismissed from, his course and, in the case of a person who was not entitled to council tax reduction immediately before he abandoned or was dismissed from his course, had that person, at that time, been entitled to housing benefit;

D = the number of reduction weeks in the assessment period.

30.9 Where a relevant payment is made by two or more instalments in a quarter, the amount of a relevant payment to be taken into account for the assessment period for the purposes of paragraph 30.1 in respect of a person to whom paragraph (30.8) applies, shall be calculated by applying the formula in paragraph 30.8 but as if—

A = the total amount of relevant payments which that person received, or would have received, from the first day of the academic year to the day the person abandoned the course, or was dismissed from it, less any deduction under paragraph 51.5

30.10 In this section— 'academic year' and 'student loan' shall have the same meanings as for the purposes of sections 43 to 45, 'assessment period' means—

a. in a case where a relevant payment is made quarterly, the period beginning with the reduction week which includes the day on which the person abandoned, or was dismissed from, his course and ending with the reduction week which includes the last day of the last quarter for which an instalment of the relevant payment was payable to that person;

b. in a case where the relevant payment is made by two or more instalments in a quarter, the period beginning with the reduction week which includes the day on which the person abandoned, or was dismissed from, his course and ending with the reduction week which includes—

i. the day immediately before the day on which the next instalment of the relevant payment would have been due had the payments continued; or

ii. the last day of the last quarter for which an instalment of the relevant payment was payable to that person.

whichever of those dates is earlier

'quarter' in relation to an assessment period means a period in that year beginning on;

a. 1st January and ending on 31st March;

b. 1st April and ending on 30th June;



- c. 1st July and ending on 31st August; or
 - d. 1st September and ending on 31st December;
- ‘relevant payment’ means either a student loan or an amount intended for the maintenance of dependants referred to in paragraph 46.7 or both.

30.11 For the avoidance of doubt there shall be included as income to be taken into account under paragraph 30.1

- a. any payment to which paragraph 25.2 (payments not earnings) applies; or
- b. in the case of an applicant who is receiving support under section 95 or 98 of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999 including support provided by virtue of regulations made under Schedule 9 to that Act, the amount of such support provided in respect of essential living needs of the applicant and his dependants (if any) as is specified in regulations made under paragraph 3 of Schedule 8 to the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999.

31.0 Capital treated as income

31.1 Any capital payable by instalments which are outstanding at the date on which the claim is made or treated as made, or, at the date of any subsequent revision or supersession, shall, if the aggregate of the instalments outstanding and the amount of the applicant’s capital otherwise calculated in accordance with sections 33 to 42 of this scheme exceeds £16,000, be treated as income.

31.2 Any payment received under an annuity shall be treated as income.

31.3 Any earnings to the extent that they are not a payment of income shall be treated as income.

31.4 Any Career Development Loan paid pursuant to section 2 of the Employment and Training Act 1973 Act shall be treated as income

31.5 Where an agreement or court order provides that payments shall be made to the applicant in consequence of any personal injury to the applicant and that such payments are to be made, wholly or partly, by way of periodic payments, any such periodic payments received by the applicant (but not a payment which is treated as capital), shall be treated as income.

32.0 Notional income

32.1 An applicant shall be treated as possessing income of which he has deprived himself for the purpose of securing entitlement of support or increasing the amount of that support.

32.2 Except in the case of–

- a. a discretionary trust;
- b. a trust derived from a payment made in consequence of a personal injury;
- c. a personal pension scheme, occupational pension scheme or a payment made by the Board of the Pension Protection Fund where the applicant has not attained the qualifying age for state pension credit;
- d. any sum to which paragraph 47(2)(a) of Schedule 5 (capital to be disregarded) applies which is administered in the way referred to in paragraph 47(1)(a);
- e. any sum to which paragraph 48(a) of Schedule 5 refers;
- f. rehabilitation allowance made under section 2 of the 1973 Act;
- g. child tax credit; or
- h. working tax credit,
- i. any sum to which paragraph 32.13 applies;

any income which would become available to the applicant upon application being made, but which has not been acquired by him, shall be treated as possessed by the applicant but only from the date on which it could be expected to be acquired were an application made.

32.3 – 32.5 Not used

- 32.6 Any payment of income, other than a payment of income specified in paragraph 32.7 made–
- a. to a third party in respect of a single applicant or a member of the family (but not a member of the third party’s family) shall, where that payment is a payment of an occupational pension, a pension or other periodical payment made under or by a personal pension scheme or a payment made by the Board of the Pension Protection Fund, be treated as possessed by that single applicant or, as the case may be, by that member;
 - b. to a third party in respect of a single applicant or in respect of a member of the family (but not a member of the third party’s family) shall, where it is not a payment referred to in sub-paragraph a), be treated as possessed by that single applicant or by that member to the extent that it is used for the food, ordinary clothing or footwear, household fuel or rent of that single applicant or, as the case may be, of any member of that family or is used for any council tax or water charges for which that applicant or member is liable;
 - c. to a single applicant or a member of the family in respect of a third party (but not in respect of another member of that family) shall be treated as possessed by that single applicant or, as the case may be, that member of the family to the extent that it is kept or used by him or used by or on behalf of any member of the family.

- 32.7 Paragraph 32.6 shall not apply in respect of a payment of income made–
- a. under the Macfarlane Trust, the Macfarlane (Special Payments) Trust, the Macfarlane (Special Payments) (No. 2) Trust, the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the Independent Living Fund (2006);
 - b. pursuant to section 19(1)(a) of the Coal Industry Act 1994 (concessionary coal);
 - c. pursuant to section 2 of the 1973 Act in respect of a person’s participation–
 - (i) in an employment programme specified in regulation 75(1)(a)(ii) of the Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations;
 - (ii) in a training scheme specified in regulation 75(1)(b)(ii) of those Regulations;
 - (iii) in the Intense Activity Period specified in regulation 75(1)(a)(iv) of those Regulations;
 - (iv) in a qualifying course within the meaning specified in regulation 17A(7) of those Regulations or;
 - (v) in the Flexible New Deal specified in regulation 75(1)(a)(v) of those Regulations;
 - d. in respect of a previous participation in the Mandatory Work Activity Scheme;
 - e. under an occupational pension scheme, in respect of a pension or other periodical payment made under a personal pension scheme or a payment made by the Board of the Pension Protection Fund where–
 - (i) a bankruptcy order has been made in respect of the person in respect of whom the payment has been made or, in Scotland, the estate of that person is subject to sequestration or a judicial factor has been appointed on that person’s estate under section 41 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980;
 - (ii) the payment is made to the trustee in bankruptcy or any other person acting on behalf of the creditors; and
 - (iii) the person referred to in (i) and any member of his family does not possess, or is not treated as possessing, any other income apart from that payment.

32.8 Where an applicant is in receipt of any benefit (other than council tax reduction) under the benefit Acts and the rate of that benefit is altered with effect from a date on or after 1st April in any year but not more than 14 days thereafter, the authority shall treat the applicant as possessing such benefit at the altered rate from either 1st April or the first Monday in April in that year, whichever date the authority shall select to apply in its area, to the date on which the altered rate is to take effect.

- 32.9 Subject to paragraph 32.10, where–
- a. applicant performs a service for another person; and

- b. that person makes no payment of earnings or pays less than that paid for a comparable employment in the area, the authority shall treat the applicant as possessing such earnings (if any) as is reasonable for that employment unless the applicant satisfies the authority that the means of that person are insufficient for him to pay or to pay more for the service.

32.10 Paragraph 32.9 shall not apply–

- a. to an applicant who is engaged by a charitable or voluntary organisation or who is a volunteer if the authority is satisfied in any of those cases that it is reasonable for him to provide those services free of charge; or
- b. in a case where the service is performed in connection with–
 - (i) the applicant’s participation in an employment or training programme in accordance with regulation 19(1)(q) of the Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations, other than where the service is performed in connection with the applicant’s participation in the Intense Activity Period specified in regulation 75(1)(a)(iv) of those Regulations or
 - (ii) the applicant’s or the applicant’s partner’s participation in an employment or training programme as defined in regulation 19(3) of those Regulations for which a training allowance is not payable or, where such an allowance is payable, it is payable for the sole purpose of reimbursement of travelling or meal expenses to the person participating in that programme ; or
- c. to an applicant who is participating in a work placement approved by the Secretary of State (or a person providing services to the Secretary of State) before the placement starts.

32.10A In paragraph 32.10 (c) ‘work placement’ means practical work experience which is not undertaken in expectation of payment.

32.11 Where an applicant is treated as possessing any income under any of paragraph 32.1 to (32.8), the foregoing provisions of this scheme shall apply for the purposes of calculating the amount of that income as if a payment has actually been made and as if it were actual income which he does possess.

32.12 Where an applicant is treated as possessing any earnings under paragraph 32.9 the foregoing provisions of this scheme shall apply for the purposes of calculating the amount of those earnings as if a payment had actually been made and as if they were actual earnings which he does possess except that paragraph (3) of section 26 (calculation of net earnings of employed earners) shall not apply and his net earnings shall be calculated by taking into account those earnings which he is treated as possessing, less;

- a. an amount in respect of income tax equivalent to an amount calculated by applying to those earnings the starting rate or, as the case may be, the starting rate and the basic rate or in the case of a Scottish taxpayer, the Scottish basic rate of tax applicable to the assessment period less only the personal relief to which the applicant is entitled under sections 257(1) of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (personal allowances) as is appropriate to his circumstances; but, if the assessment period is less than a year, the earnings to which the starting rate of tax is to be applied and the amount of the personal relief deductible under this sub-paragraph shall be calculated on a pro rate basis;
- b. an amount equivalent to the amount of the primary Class 1 contributions that would be payable by him under the Act in respect of those earnings if such contributions were payable; and
- c. one-half of any sum payable by the applicant by way of a contribution towards an occupational or personal pension scheme.

32.13 Paragraphs (32.1), (32.2), (32.6) and (32.9) shall not apply in respect of any amount of income other than earnings, or earnings of an employed earner, arising out of the applicant’s participation as a service user.



Sections 33 – 42 & Schedule 5

Definition and the treatment of capital for Council tax reduction purposes



33.0 Capital limit

33.1 For the purposes of this scheme, the prescribed amount is £16,000 and no support shall be granted when the applicant has an amount greater than this level

34.0 Calculation of capital

34.1 For the purposes of this scheme, the capital of an applicant to be taken into account shall, subject to paragraph (34.2), be the whole of his capital calculated in accordance with this scheme and any income treated as capital under section 36 (income treated as capital).

34.2 There shall be disregarded from the calculation of an applicant's capital under paragraph (34.1), any capital, where applicable, specified in Schedule 5.

35.0 Disregard of capital of child and young person

35.1 The capital of a child or young person who is a member of the applicant's family shall not be treated as capital of the applicant.

36.0 Income treated as capital

36.1 Any bounty derived from employment to which paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 applies and paid at intervals of at least one year shall be treated as capital.

36.2 Any amount by way of a refund of income tax deducted from profits or emoluments chargeable to income tax under Schedule D or E shall be treated as capital.

36.3 Any holiday pay which is not earnings under section 25(1)(d) (earnings of employed earners) shall be treated as capital.

36.4 Except any income derived from capital disregarded under paragraphs 1, 2, 4, 8, 14 or 25 to 28, 47 or 48 of Schedule 5, any income derived from capital shall be treated as capital but only from the date it is normally due to be credited to the applicant's account.

36.5 In the case of employment as an employed earner, any advance of earnings or any loan made by the applicant's employer shall be treated as capital.

36.6 Any charitable or voluntary payment which is not made or due to be made at regular intervals, other than a payment which is made under or by the Trusts, the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation, the Independent Living Fund (2006) or the London Bombings Charitable Relief Fund, shall be treated as capital.

36.7 There shall be treated as capital the gross receipts of any commercial activity carried on by a person in respect of which assistance is received under the self-employment route, but only in so far as those receipts were payable into a special account during the period in which that person was receiving such assistance.

36.8 Any arrears of subsistence allowance which are paid to an applicant as a lump sum shall be treated as capital.

36.9 Any arrears of working tax credit or child tax credit shall be treated as capital.

37.0 Calculation of capital in the United Kingdom

37.1 Capital which an applicant possesses in the United Kingdom shall be calculated at its current market or surrender value less—

- a. where there would be expenses attributable to the sale, 10 per cent.; and
- b. the amount of any encumbrance secured on it;

38.0 Calculation of capital outside the United Kingdom

38.1 Capital which an applicant possesses in a country outside the United Kingdom shall be calculated

- a. in a case where there is no prohibition in that country against the transfer to the United Kingdom of an amount equal to its current market or surrender value in that country, at that value.
- b. in a case where there is such a prohibition, at the price which it would realise if sold in the United Kingdom to a willing buyer, less, where there would be expenses attributable to sale, 10 per cent. and the amount of any encumbrances secured on it.

39.0 Notional capital

39.1 An applicant shall be treated as possessing capital of which he has deprived himself for the purpose of securing entitlement to council tax reduction or increasing the amount of that support except to the extent that that capital is reduced in accordance with section 40 (diminishing notional capital rule).

39.2 Except in the case of

- (a) a discretionary trust; or
- (b) a trust derived from a payment made in consequence of a personal injury; or
- (c) any loan which would be obtained only if secured against capital disregarded under Schedule 5; or
- (d) a personal pension scheme, occupational pension scheme or a payment made by the Board of the Pension Protection Fund; or
- (e) any sum to which paragraph 47(2)(a) of Schedule 5 (capital to be disregarded) applies which is administered in the way referred to in paragraph 47(1)(a); or
- (f) any sum to which paragraph 48(a) of Schedule 5 refers; or
- (g) child tax credit; or
- (h) working tax credit,

any capital which would become available to the applicant upon application being made, but which has not been acquired by him, shall be treated as possessed by him but only from the date on which it could be expected to be acquired were an application made.

39.3 Any payment of capital, other than a payment of capital specified in paragraph (39.4), made

- (a) to a third party in respect of a single applicant or a member of the family (but not a member of the third party's family) shall, where that payment is a payment of an occupational pension, a pension or other periodical payment made under a personal pension scheme or a payment made by the Board of the Pension Protection Fund, be treated as possessed by that single applicant or, as the case may be, by that member;
- (b) to a third party in respect of a single applicant or in respect of a member of the family (but not a member of the third party's family) shall, where it is not a payment referred to in subparagraph (a), be treated as possessed by that single applicant or by that member to the extent that it is used for the food, ordinary clothing or footwear, household fuel or rent of that single applicant or, as the case may be, of any member of that family or is used for any council tax or water charges for which that applicant or member is liable;
- (c) to a single applicant or a member of the family in respect of a third party (but not in respect of another member of that family) shall be treated as possessed by that single applicant or, as the case may be, that member of the family to the extent that it is kept or used by him or used by or on behalf of any member of the family.

39.4 Paragraph 39.3 shall not apply in respect of a payment of capital made:

- a. under or by any of the Trusts, the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Independent Living Fund (2006), the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the London Bombings Relief Charitable Fund;
- b. pursuant to section 2 of the 1973 Act in respect of a person's participation:
 - i. in an employment programme specified in regulation 75(1)(a)(ii) of the Jobseeker's

Allowance Regulations;

- ii. in a training scheme specified in regulation 75(1)(b)(ii) of those Regulations;
- iii. in the Intense Activity Period specified in regulation 75(1)(a)(iv) of those Regulations;
- iv. in a qualifying course within the meaning specified in regulation 17A(7) of those Regulations; or
- v. in the Flexible New Deal specified in regulation 75(1)(a)(v) of those Regulations;
- c. in respect of a person's participation in the Mandatory Work Activity Scheme;
- d. Enterprise Scheme;
- e. in respect of an applicant's participation in the Employment, Skills and Enterprise Scheme or Back to Work Scheme;
- f. under an occupational pension scheme, in respect of a pension or other periodical payment made under a personal pension scheme or a payment made by the Board of the Pension Protection Fund where—
 - i. a bankruptcy order has been made in respect of the person in respect of whom the payment has been made or, in Scotland, the estate of that person is subject to sequestration or a judicial factor has been appointed on that person's estate under section 41 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980;
 - ii. the payment is made to the trustee in bankruptcy or any other person acting on behalf of the creditors; and
 - iii. the person referred to in (i) and any member of his family does not possess, or is not treated as possessing, any other income apart from that payment.

39.5 Where an applicant stands in relation to a company in a position analogous to that of a sole owner or partner in the business of that company, he may be treated as if he were such sole owner or partner and in such a case

- a. the value of his holding in that company shall, notwithstanding section 34 (calculation of capital) be disregarded; and
- b. he shall, subject to paragraph 39.6, be treated as possessing an amount of capital equal to the value or, as the case may be, his share of the value of the capital of that company and the foregoing provisions of this Section shall apply for the purposes of calculating that amount as if it were actual capital which he does possess.

39.6 For so long as the applicant undertakes activities in the course of the business of the company, the amount which, he is treated as possessing under paragraph 39.5 shall be disregarded.

39.7 Where an applicant is treated as possessing capital under any of paragraphs 39.1 to 39.2 the foregoing provisions of this Section shall apply for the purposes of calculating its amount as if it were actual capital, which he does possess.

40.0 Not Used

41.0 Capital jointly held

41.1 Except where an applicant possesses capital which is disregarded under paragraph 39(5) (notional capital) where an applicant and one or more persons are beneficially entitled in possession to any capital asset they shall be treated, in the absence of evidence to the contrary, as if each of them were entitled in possession to the whole beneficial interest therein in an equal share and the foregoing provisions of this Section shall apply for the purposes of calculating the amount of capital which the applicant is treated as possessing as if it were actual capital which the applicant does possess

42.0 Calculation of tariff income from capital

42.1 Where the applicant's capital calculated in accordance with this scheme exceeds £6,000 it shall be treated as equivalent to a weekly income of £1 for each complete £250 of in excess of £6,000 but not exceeding £16,000



- 42.2 Notwithstanding paragraph 42.1 where any part of the excess is not a complete £250 that part shall be treated as equivalent to a weekly tariff income of £1.
- 42.3 For the purposes of paragraph 42.1, capital includes any income treated as capital under section 36 (income treated as capital).



Sections 43 - 56

Definition and the treatment of students for Council tax reduction purposes²³

²³ Amounts shown in sections 43 to 56 will be updated in line with the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 (as amended)

43.0 Student related definitions

43.1 In this scheme the following definitions apply;

'academic year' means the period of twelve months beginning on 1st January, 1st April, 1st July or 1st September according to whether the course in question begins in the winter, the spring, the summer or the autumn respectively but if students are required to begin attending the course during August or September and to continue attending through the autumn, the academic year of the course shall be considered to begin in the autumn rather than the summer;

'access funds' means;

- a. grants made under section 68 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 for the purpose of providing funds on a discretionary basis to be paid to students;
- b. grants made under section 73(a) and (c) and 74(1) of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980;
- c. grants made under Article 30 of the Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1993 or grants, loans or other payments made under Article 5 of the Further Education (Northern Ireland) Order 1997 in each case being grants, or grants, loans or other payments as the case may be, for the purpose of assisting students in financial difficulties;
- d. discretionary payments, known as "learner support funds", which are made available to students in further education by institutions out of funds provided by the Secretary of State under section 14 of the Education Act 2002 or the Chief Executive of Skills Funding under sections 100 and 101 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009; or
- e. Financial Contingency Funds made available by the Welsh Ministers;

'college of further education' means a college of further education within the meaning of Part 1 of the Further and Higher Education (Scotland) Act 1992;

'contribution' means;

- a. any contribution in respect of the income of a student or any person which the Secretary of State, the Scottish Ministers or an education authority takes into account in ascertaining the amount of a student's grant or student loan; or
- b. any sums, which in determining the amount of a student's allowance or bursary in Scotland under the Education (Scotland) Act 1980, the Scottish Ministers or education authority takes into account being sums which the Scottish Ministers or education authority consider that it is reasonable for the following person to contribute towards the holder's expenses;
 - (i) the holder of the allowance or bursary;
 - (ii) the holder's parents;
 - (iii) the holder's parent's spouse, civil partner or a person ordinarily living with the holder's parent as if he or she were the spouse or civil partner of that parent; or
 - (iv) the holder's spouse or civil partner;

'course of study' means any course of study, whether or not it is a sandwich course and whether or not a grant is made for attending or undertaking it;

'covenant income' means the gross income payable to a full-time student under a Deed of Covenant by his parent;

'education authority' means a government department, a local authority as defined in section 579 of the Education Act 1996 (interpretation), a local education authority as defined in section 123 of the Local Government (Scotland) Act 1973, an education and library board established under Article 3 of the Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986, any body which is a research council for the purposes of the Science and Technology Act 1965 or any analogous government department, authority, board or body, of the Channel Islands, Isle of Man or any other country outside Great Britain;

'full-time course of study' means a full time course of study which;

- a. is not funded in whole or in part by the Secretary of State under section 14 of the Education Act 2002, the Chief Executive of Skills Funding or by the Welsh Ministers or a full-time course of study which is not funded in whole or in part by the Scottish Ministers

- at a college of further education or a full-time course of study which is a course of higher education and is funded in whole or in part by the Scottish Ministers;;
- b. is funded in whole or in part by the Secretary of State under section 14 of the Education Act 2002, the Chief Executive of Skills Funding or by the Welsh Ministers if it involves more than 16 guided learning hours per week for the student in question, according to the number of guided learning hours per week for that student set out—
- (i) in the case of a course funded by the Secretary of State under section 14 of the Education Act 2002 or the Chief Executive of Skills Funding, in the student’s learning agreement signed on behalf of the establishment which is funded by either of those persons for the delivery of that course; or
- (ii) in the case of a course funded by the Welsh Ministers, in a document signed on behalf of the establishment which is funded by that Council for the delivery of that course; or
- c. is not higher education and is funded in whole or in part by the Scottish Ministers at a college of further education and involves—
- (i) more than 16 hours per week of classroom-based or workshop-based programmed learning under the direct guidance of teaching staff according to the number of hours set out in a document signed on behalf of the college; or
- (ii) 16 hours or less per week of classroom-based or workshop-based programmed learning under the direct guidance of teaching staff and additional hours using structured learning packages supported by the teaching staff where the combined total of hours exceeds 21 hours per week, according to the number of hours set out in a document signed on behalf of the college;

‘full-time student’ means a person attending or undertaking a full-time course of study and includes a student on a sandwich course;

‘grant’ (except in the definition of ‘access funds’) means any kind of educational grant or award and includes any scholarship, studentship, exhibition allowance or bursary but does not include a payment from access funds or any payment to which paragraph 12 of Schedule 4 or paragraph 53 of Schedule 5 applies;

‘grant income’ means

- (a) any income by way of a grant;
- (b) any contribution whether or not it is paid;

‘higher education’ means higher education within the meaning of Part 2 of the Further and Higher Education (Scotland) Act 1992;

‘last day of the course’ means;

- a. in the case of a qualifying course, the date on which the last day of that course falls or the date on which the final examination relating to that course is completed, whichever is the later;
- b. in any other case, the date on which the last day of the final academic term falls in respect of the course in which the student is enrolled;

‘period of study’ means—

- a. in the case of a course of study for one year or less, the period beginning with the start of the course and ending with the last day of the course;
- b. in the case of a course of study for more than one year, in the first or, as the case may be, any subsequent year of the course, other than the final year of the course, the period beginning with the start of the course or, as the case may be, the year’s start and ending with either—
- (i) the day before the start of the next year of the course in a case where the student’s grant or loan is assessed at a rate appropriate to his studying throughout the year, or, if he does not have a grant or loan, where a loan would have been assessed at such a rate had he had one; or
- (ii) in any other case, the day before the start of the normal summer vacation appropriate to his course;
- c. in the final year of a course of study of more than one year, the period beginning with that year’s start and ending with the last day of the course;

‘periods of experience’ means periods of work experience which form part of a sandwich course;

‘qualifying course’ means a qualifying course as defined for the purposes of Parts 2 and 4 of the Jobseeker’s Allowance Regulations;

‘modular course’ means a course of study which consists of two or more modules, the successful completion of a specified number of which is required before a person is considered by the educational establishment to have completed the course.

‘sandwich course’ has the meaning prescribed in regulation 2(9) of the Education (Student Support) Regulations 2008, regulation 4(2) of the Education (Student Loans), (Scotland), Regulations 2007 or regulation 2(8) of the Education (Student Support) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2007, as the case may be;

‘standard maintenance grant’ means–

- a. except where paragraph (b) or (c) applies, in the case of a student attending or undertaking a course of study at the University of London or an establishment within the area comprising the City of London and the Metropolitan Police District, the amount specified for the time being in paragraph 2(2)(a) of Schedule 2 to the Education (Mandatory Awards) Regulations 2003 (‘the 2003 Regulations’) for such a student;
- b. except where paragraph (c) applies, in the case of a student residing at his parent’s home, the amount specified in paragraph 3 thereof;
- c. in the case of a student receiving an allowance or bursary under the Education (Scotland) Act 1980, the amount of money specified as ‘standard maintenance allowance’ for the relevant year appropriate for the student set out in the Student Support in Scotland Guide issued by the student Awards Agency for Scotland, or its nearest equivalent in the case of a bursary provided by a college of further education or a local education authority;
- d. in any other case, the amount specified in paragraph 2(2) of Schedule 2 to the 2003 Regulations other than in sub-paragraph (a) or (b) thereof;

‘student’ means a person, other than a person in receipt of a training allowance, who is attending or undertaking–

- a. a course of study at an educational establishment; or
- b. a qualifying course;

‘student loan’ means a loan towards a student’s maintenance pursuant to any regulations made under section 22 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998, section 73 of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980 or Article 3 of the Education (Student Support) (Northern Ireland) Order 1998 and shall include, in Scotland, a young student’s bursary paid under regulation 4(1)(c) of the Student’s Allowances (Scotland) Regulations 2007

- 43.2 For the purposes of the definition of ‘full-time student’, a person shall be regarded as attending or, as the case may be, undertaking a full-time course of study or as being on a sandwich course
 - a. in the case of a person attending or undertaking a part of a modular course which would be a full-time course of study for the purposes of this Part, for the period beginning on the day on which that part of the course starts and ending;
 - (i) on the last day on which he is registered with the educational establishment as attending or undertaking that part as a full-time course of study; or
 - (ii) on such earlier date (if any) as he finally abandons the course or is dismissed from it;
 - b. in any other case, throughout the period beginning on the date on which he starts attending or undertaking the course and ending on the last day of the course or on such earlier date (if any) as he finally abandons it or is dismissed from it.

- 43.3 For the purposes of sub-paragraph (a) of paragraph 43.2, the period referred to in that sub-paragraph shall include;
 - a. where a person has failed examinations or has failed to successfully complete a module relating to a period when he was attending or undertaking a part of the course as a full-time course of study, any period in respect of which he attends or undertakes the course for the purpose of retaking those examinations or that module;
 - b. any period of vacation within the period specified in that paragraph or immediately following that period except where the person has registered with the educational establishment to attend or undertake the final module in the course and the vacation immediately follows the last day on which he is required to attend or undertake the course.



44.0 Treatment of students

44.1 The following sections relate to students who claim Council tax reduction

45.0 Students who are excluded from entitlement to council tax reduction

45.1 Students (except those specified in paragraph 45.3) are not able to claim Council tax reduction under Classes D and E of the Council's reduction scheme.

45.2 To be eligible for support, the student must be liable for Council Tax under Section 6 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992 and they must not be deemed to be a full time student or a persons from abroad within the meaning of section 7 of this scheme (persons from aboard).

- 45.3 Paragraph 45.2 shall not apply to a student
- (a) who is a person on income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance;
 - (b) who is a lone parent;
 - (c) whose applicable amount would, but for this section, include the disability premium or severe disability premium;
 - (d) whose applicable amount would include the disability premium but for his being treated as capable of work by virtue of a determination made in accordance with regulations made under section 171E of the Act;
 - (e) who is, or is treated as, incapable of work and has been so incapable, or has been so treated as incapable, of work in accordance with the provisions of, and regulations made under, Part 12A of the Act (incapacity for work) for a continuous period of not less than 196 days; and for this purpose any two or more separate periods separated by a break of not more than 56 days shall be treated as one continuous period;
 - (f) who has, or is treated as having, limited capability for work and has had, or been treated as having, limited capability for work in accordance with the Employment and Support Allowance Regulations for a continuous period of not less than 196 days, and for this purpose any two or more separate periods separated by a break of not more than 84 days must be treated as one continuous period.
 - (g) who has a partner who is also a full-time student, if he or that partner is treated as responsible for a child or young person;
 - (h) who is a single applicant with whom a child is placed by a local authority or voluntary organisation within the meaning of the Children Act 1989, or, in Scotland, boarded out within the meaning of the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968;
 - (i) who is;
 - (i) aged under 21 and whose course of study is not a course of higher education, or
 - (ii) a qualifying young person or child within the meaning of section 142 of the Act (child and qualifying young person);
 - (j) in respect of whom
 - i) a supplementary requirement has been determined under paragraph 9 of Part 2 of Schedule 2 to the Education (Mandatory Awards) Regulations 2003;
 - (ii) an allowance, or as the case may be, bursary has been granted which includes a sum under paragraph (1)(d) or regulation 4 of the Students' Allowances (Scotland) Regulations 1999 or, as the case may be, under paragraph (1)(d) of regulation 4 of the Education Authority (Bursaries) (Scotland) Regulations 1995, in respect of expenses incurred;
 - (iii) a payment has been made under section 2 of the Education Act 1962 or under or by virtue of regulations made under the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998;
 - (iv) a grant has been made under regulation 13 of the Education (Student Support) Regulations 2005 or under regulation 13 of the Education (Student Support) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2000; or
 - (v) a supplementary requirement has been determined under paragraph 9 of



Schedule 6 to the Students Awards Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1999 or a payment has been made under Article 50(3) of the Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986,

on account of his disability by reason of deafness.

- 45.3A For the purposes of paragraph 45.3(h)(i) the student must have begun, or been enrolled or accepted onto the course before attaining the age of 19
- 45.4 For the purposes of paragraph 45.3, once paragraph 45.3(e) applies to a full-time student, if he then ceases, for a period of 56 days or less, to be incapable, or to be treated as incapable, of work, that paragraph shall, on his again becoming so incapable, or so treated as incapable, of work at the end of that period, immediately thereafter apply to him for so long as he remains incapable or is treated as remaining incapable, of work.
- 45.5 In paragraph 45.3(h) the reference to a course of higher education is a reference to a course of any description mentioned in Schedule 6 to the Education Reform Act 1988.
- 45.6 A full-time student to whom sub-paragraph (i) of paragraph 45.3 applies, shall be treated as satisfying that sub-paragraph from the date on which he made a request for the supplementary requirement, allowance, bursary or payment as the case may be.
- 45.7 Paragraph 45.2 shall not apply to a full-time student for the period specified in paragraph 45.8 if;
- (a) at any time during an academic year, with the consent of the relevant educational establishment, he ceases to attend or undertake a course because he is;
 - (i) engaged in caring for another person; or
 - (ii) ill;
 - (b) he has subsequently ceased to be engaged in engaging in caring for that person or, as the case may be, he has subsequently recovered from that illness; and
 - (c) he is not eligible for a grant or a student loan in respect of the period specified in paragraph 45.8.
- 45.8 The period specified for the purposes of paragraph 45.7 is the period, not exceeding one year, beginning on the day on which he ceased to be engaged in caring for that person or, as the case may be, the day on which he recovered from that illness and ending on the day before;
- (a) the day on which he resumes attending or undertaking the course; or
 - (b) the day from which the relevant educational establishment has agreed that he may resume attending or undertaking the course,
- which shall first occur.

46.0 Calculation of grant income

- 46.1 The amount of a student's grant income to be taken into account shall, subject to paragraphs 46.2 and 46.3, be the whole of his grant income.
- 46.2 There shall be excluded from a student's grant income any payment;
- (a) intended to meet tuition fees or examination fees;
 - (b) in respect of the student's disability;
 - (c) intended to meet additional expenditure connected with term time residential study away from the student's educational establishment;
 - (d) on account of the student maintaining a home at a place other than that at which he resides during his course;
 - (e) on account of any other person but only if that person is residing outside of the United Kingdom and there is no applicable amount in respect of him;

- (f) intended to meet the cost of books and equipment;
 - (g) intended to meet travel expenses incurred as a result of his attendance on the course;
 - (h) intended for the child care costs of a child dependant.
 - (i) of higher education bursary for care leavers made under Part III of the Children Act 1989.
- 46.3 Where a student does not have a student loan and is not treated as possessing such a loan, there shall be excluded from the student's grant income;
- (a) the sum of £303 per academic year in respect of travel costs; and
 - (b) the sum of £390 per academic year towards the costs of books and equipment, whether or not any such costs are incurred.
- The above figures will be increased annually in line with the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 (as amended).
- 46.4 There shall also be excluded from a student's grant income the grant for dependants known as the parents' learning allowance paid pursuant to regulations made under Article 3 of the Education (Student Support) (Northern Ireland) Order 1998 or section 22 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998.
- 46.5 Subject to paragraphs 46.6 and 46.7, a student's grant income shall be apportioned;
- (a) subject to paragraph 46.8, in a case where it is attributable to the period of study, equally between the weeks in that period beginning with the reduction week, the first day of which coincides with, or immediately follows the first day of the period of study and ending with the reduction week, the last day of which coincides with, or immediately precedes, the last day of the period of study;
 - (b) in any other case, equally between the weeks in the period beginning with the reduction week, the first day of which coincides with, or immediately follows, the first day of the period for which it is payable and ending with the reduction week, the last day of which coincides with, or immediately precedes, the last day of the period for which it is payable.
- 46.6 Any grant in respect of dependants paid under section 63(6) of the Health Services and Public Health Act 1968 (grants in respect of the provision of instruction to officers of hospital authorities) and any amount intended for the maintenance of dependants under Part 3 of Schedule 2 to the Education (Mandatory Awards) Regulations 2004 shall be apportioned equally over the period of 52 weeks or, if there are 53 reduction weeks (including part-weeks) in the year, 53.
- 46.7 In a case where a student is in receipt of a student loan or where he could have acquired a student loan by taking reasonable steps but had not done so, any amount intended for the maintenance of dependants to which neither paragraph 46.6 nor section 50 (other amounts to be disregarded) apply, shall be apportioned over the same period as the student's loan is apportioned or, as the case may be, would have been apportioned.
- 46.8 In the case if a student on a sandwich course, any periods of experience within the period of study shall be excluded and the student's grant income shall be apportioned equally between the weeks in the period beginning with the reduction week, the first day of which immediately follows the last day of the period of experience and ending with the reduction week, the last day of which coincides with, or immediately precedes, the last day of the period of study.
- 47.0 Calculation of covenant income where a contribution is assessed**
- 47.1 Where a student is in receipt of income by way of a grant during a period of study and a contribution has been assessed, the amount of his covenant income to be taken into account for that period and any summer vacation immediately following shall be the whole amount of the covenant income less, subject to paragraph 47.3, the amount of the contribution.

- 47.2 The weekly amount of the student's covenant shall be determined—
- (a) by dividing the amount of income which falls to be taken into account under paragraph 47.1 by 52 or 53, whichever is reasonable in the circumstances; and
 - (b) by disregarding from the resulting amount, £5.

47.3 For the purposes of paragraph 47.1, the contribution shall be treated as increased by the amount (if any) by which the amount excluded under paragraph 46.2(g) (calculation of grant income) falls short of the amount specified in paragraph 7(2) of Schedule 2 to the Education (Mandatory Awards) Regulations 2003 (travel expenditure).

48.0 Covenant income where no grant income or no contribution is assessed

48.1 Where a student is not in receipt of income by way of a grant the amount of his covenant income shall be calculated as follows;

- (a) any sums intended for any expenditure specified in paragraph 46.2 (a) to (e) (calculation of grant income) necessary as a result of his attendance on the course shall be disregarded;
- (b) any covenant income, up to the amount of the standard maintenance grant, which is not so disregarded, shall be apportioned equally between the weeks of the period of study;
- (c) there shall be disregarded from the amount so apportioned the amount which would have been disregarded under paragraph 46.2(f) and 46.3 (calculation of grant income) had the student been in receipt of the standard maintenance grant; and
- (d) the balance, if any, shall be divided by 52 or 53 whichever is reasonable in the circumstances and treated as weekly income of which £5 shall be disregarded.

48.2 Where a student is in receipt of income by way of a grant and no contribution has been assessed, the amount of his covenanted income shall be calculated in accordance with sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) of paragraph 48.1, except that;

- (a) the value of the standard maintenance grant shall be abated by the amount of such grant income less an amount equal to the amount of any sums disregarded under paragraph 46.2 (a) to (e); and
- (b) the amount to be disregarded under paragraph 48.1(c) shall be abated by an amount equal to the amount of any sums disregarded under paragraph 46.2(f) and (g) and 46.3.

49.0 Student Covenant Income and Grant income – non disregard

49.1 No part of a student's covenant income or grant income shall be disregarded under paragraph 15 of Schedule 4 to this scheme

50.0 Other amounts to be disregarded

50.1 For the purposes of ascertaining income other than grant income, covenant income and loans treated as income in accordance with section 51, any amounts intended for any expenditure specified in paragraph 46.2 (calculation of grant income), necessary as a result of his attendance on the course shall be disregarded but only if, and to the extent that, the necessary expenditure exceeds or is likely to exceed the amount of the sums disregarded under paragraphs 46.2 or 46.3, 47.3, 48.1(a) or (c) or 51.5 (calculation of grant income, covenant income and treatment of student loans) on like expenditure.

51.0 Treatment of student loans

51.1 A student loan shall be treated as income.

51.2 In calculating the weekly amount of the loan to be taken into account as income

- (a) in respect of a course that is of a single academic year's duration or less, a loan which is

payable in respect of that period shall be apportioned equally between the weeks in the period beginning with;

- (i) except in a case where (ii) applies, the reduction week, the first day of which coincides with, or immediately follows, the first day of the single academic year;
 - (ii) where the student is required to start attending the course in August or where the course is less than an academic year's duration, the reduction week, the first day of which coincides with, or immediately follows, the first day of the course, and ending with the reduction week, the last day of which coincides with, or immediately precedes with last day of the course,
- (b) in respect of an academic year of a course which starts other than on 1st September, a loan which is payable in respect of that academic year shall be apportioned equally between the weeks in the period beginning with the reduction week, the first day of which coincides with or immediately follows, the first day of that academic year and ending with the reduction week, the last day of which coincides with or immediately precedes, the last day of that academic year but excluding any reduction weeks falling entirely within the quarter during which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, the longest of any vacation is taken and for the purposes of this sub-paragraph, 'quarter' shall have the same meaning as for the purposes of the Education (Student Support) Regulations 2005;
- (c) in respect of the final academic year of a course (not being a course of a single year's duration), a loan which is payable in respect of that final academic year shall be apportioned equally between the weeks in the period beginning with;
- (i) except in a case where (ii) applies, the reduction week, the first day of which coincides with or immediately follows, the first day of that academic year;
 - (ii) where the final academic year starts on 1st September, the reduction week, the first day of which coincide with, or immediately follows, the earlier of 1st September or the first day of the autumn term, and ending with the reduction week, the last day of which coincides with, or immediately precedes, the last day of the course;
- (d) in any other case, the loan shall be apportioned equally between the weeks in the period beginning with the earlier of;
- (i) the first day of the first reduction week in September; or
 - (ii) the reduction week, the first day of which coincides with, or immediately follows the first day of the autumn term, and ending with the reduction week, the last day of which coincides with, or immediately precedes, the last day of June,

and, in all cases, from the weekly amount so apportioned there shall be disregarded £10.

51.3 A student shall be treated as possessing a student loan in respect of an academic year where;

- (a) a student loan has been made to him in respect of that year; or
- (b) he could acquire such a loan in respect of that year by taking reasonable steps to do so.

51.4 Where a student is treated as possessing a student loan under paragraph 51.3, the amount of the student loan to be taken into account as income shall be, subject to paragraph 51.5

- (a) in the case of a student to whom a student loan is made in respect of an academic year, a sum equal to
 - (i) the maximum student loan he is able to acquire in respect of that year by taking reasonable steps to do so; and
 - (ii) any contribution whether or not it has been paid to him;
- (b) in the case of a student to whom a student loan is not made in respect of an academic year, the maximum student loan that would be made to the student if;
 - (i) he took all reasonable steps to obtain the maximum student loan he is able to acquire



in respect of that year; and
(ii) no deduction in that loan was made by virtue of the application of a means test.

- 51.5 There shall be deducted from the amount of income taken into account under paragraph 51.4
- (a) the sum of £303 per academic year in respect of travel costs; and
 - (b) the sum of £390 per academic year towards the cost of books and equipment, whether or not any such costs are incurred.

The above figures will be increased annually in line with the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 (as amended).

51A.0 Treatment of fee loans

- 51A. 1A loan for fees, known as a fee loan or a fee contribution loan, made pursuant to regulations made under Article 3 of the Education (Student Support) (Northern Ireland) Order 1998, section 22 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998 or section 73(f) of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980, shall be disregarded as income.

52.0 Treatment of payments from access funds

- 52.1 This paragraph applies to payments from access funds that are not payments to which paragraph 55.2 or 55.3 (income treated as capital) applies.

- 52.2 A payment from access funds, other than a payment to which paragraph 52.3 applies, shall be disregarded as income.

- 52.3 Subject to paragraph 52.4 of this section and paragraph 35 of Schedule 4,
- a) any payments from access funds which are intended and used for an item of food, ordinary clothing or footwear, household fuel, or rent of a single applicant or, as the case may be, of the applicant or any other member of his family and
 - b) any payments from access funds which are used for any council tax or water charges for which that applicant or member is liable, shall be disregarded as income to the extent of £20 per week.

- 52.4 Where a payment from access funds is made—
- (a) on or after 1st September or the first day of the course, whichever first occurs, but before receipt of any student loan in respect of that year and that payment is intended for the purpose of bridging the period until receipt of the student loan; or
 - (b) before the first day of the course to a person in anticipation of that person becoming a student,
- that payment shall be disregarded as income.

53.0 Disregard of contribution

- 53.1 Where the applicant or his partner is a student and for the purposes of assessing a contribution to the student's grant or student loan, the other partner's income has been taken into account, an amount equal to that contribution shall be disregarded for the purposes of assessing that other partner's income.

54.0 Further disregard of student's income

- 54.1 Where any part of a student's income has already been taken into account for the purpose of assessing his entitlement to a grant or student loan, the amount taken into account shall be disregarded in assessing that student's income.



55.0 Income treated as capital

55.1 Any amount by way of a refund of tax deducted from a student's covenant income shall be treated as capital.

55.2 Any amount paid from access funds as a single lump sum shall be treated as capital.

55.3 An amount paid from access fund as a single lump sum which is intended and used for an item other than food, ordinary clothing or footwear, household fuel or rent, or which is used for an item other than any council tax or water charges for which that applicant or member is liable, shall be disregarded as capital but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date of the payment.

56.0 Disregard of changes occurring during summer vacation

56.1 In calculating a student's income the authority shall disregard any change in the standard maintenance grant, occurring in the recognised summer vacation appropriate to the student's course, if that vacation does not form part of his period of study from the date on which the change occurred to the end of that vacation.



Sections 57 – 63

The calculation and amount of Council tax reduction

57.0 Maximum council tax reduction

57.1 Subject to paragraphs 57.2 to 57.4, the amount of a person's maximum council tax reduction in respect of a day for which he is liable to pay council tax, shall be 100 per cent, of the amount A divided by B where;

- (a) A is the amount set by the appropriate authority as the council tax for the relevant financial year in respect of the dwelling in which he is a resident and for which he is liable, subject to any discount which may be appropriate to that dwelling under the 1992 Act; and
- (b) B is the number of days in that financial year,

less any deductions in respect of non-dependants which fall to be made under section 58 (non-dependant deductions).

57.2 In calculating a person's maximum council tax reduction any reduction in the amount that person is liable to pay in respect of council tax, which is made in consequence of any enactment in, or made under, the 1992 Act, shall be taken into account.

57.3 Subject to paragraph 57.4, where an applicant is jointly and severally liable for council tax in respect of a dwelling in which he is resident with one or more other persons but excepting any person so residing with the applicant who is a student to whom paragraph 45.2 (students who are excluded from entitlement to council tax reduction) applies, in determining the maximum council tax reduction in his case in accordance with paragraph 57.1, the amount A shall be divided by the number of persons who are jointly and severally liable for that tax.

57.4 Where an applicant is jointly and severally liable for council tax in respect of a dwelling with only his partner, paragraph 57.3 shall not apply in his case

58.0 Non-dependant deductions²⁴

58.1 Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, the non-dependant deductions in respect of a day referred to in section 57 (maximum council tax reduction) shall be;

- (a) in respect of a non-dependant aged 18 or over in remunerative work, £12.20 x 1/7;
- (b) in respect of a non-dependant aged 18 or over to whom sub-paragraph (a) does not apply, £4.00 x 1/7.

58.2 In the case of a non-dependant aged 18 or over to whom paragraph 58.1(a) applies, where it is shown to the appropriate authority that his normal gross weekly income is—

- (a) less than £207.70, the deduction to be made under this paragraph shall be that specified in paragraph 58.1(b);
- (b) not less than £207.70, but less than £360.10, the deduction to be made under this section shall be £8.10 x 1/7
- (c) not less than £360.10, but less than £447.40, the deduction to be made under this section shall be £10.20 x 1/7;

58.3 Only one deduction shall be made under this section in respect of a couple or, as the case may be, members of a polygamous marriage and, where, but for this paragraph, the amount that would fall to be deducted in respect of one member of a couple or polygamous marriage is higher than the amount (if any) that would fall to be deducted in respect of the other, or any other, member, the higher amount shall be deducted.

58.4 In applying the provisions of paragraph 58.2 in the case of a couple or, as the case may be a

²⁴ The amounts shown within this section shall be updated in line with the Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) Regulations 2012

polygamous marriage, regard shall be had, for the purpose of that paragraph, to the couple's or, as the case may be, all members of the polygamous marriage's joint weekly gross income.

- 58.5 Where in respect of a day–
- a. a person is a resident in a dwelling but is not himself liable for council tax in respect of that dwelling and that day;
 - b. other residents in that dwelling (the liable persons) have joint and several liability for council tax in respect of that dwelling and that day otherwise than by virtue of section 9 or 77 or 77A of the 1992 Act (liability of spouses and civil partners); and
 - c. the person to whom sub-paragraph (a) refers is a non-dependant of two or more of the liable persons, the deduction in respect of that non-dependant shall be apportioned equally between those liable persons.
- 58.6 No deduction shall be made in respect of any non-dependants occupying an applicant's dwelling if the applicant or his partner is–
- a. blind or treated as blind by virtue of paragraph 9 of Schedule 1 (additional condition for the disability premium); or
 - b. receiving in respect of himself:
 - attendance allowance, or would be receiving that allowance but for:
 - i. a suspension of benefit in accordance with regulations under section 113(2) of The Act; or
 - ii. an abatement as a result of hospitalisation; or
 - the care component of the disability living allowance, or would be receiving that component but for:
 - i. a suspension of benefit in accordance with regulations under section 113(2) of The Act; or
 - ii. an abatement as a result of hospitalisation; or
 - c. the daily living component of personal independence payment, or would be receiving that allowance but for a suspension of benefit in accordance with regulations under section 86 of the Welfare Reform Act 2012 (hospital in-patients);
 - d. an AFIP, or would be receiving that payment but for a suspension of it in accordance with any terms of the armed and reserve forces compensation scheme which allows for a suspension because a person is undergoing medical treatment in a hospital or similar institution;
- 58.7 No deduction shall be made in respect of a non-dependant if:
- a. although he resides with the applicant, it appears to the authority that his normal home is elsewhere; or
 - b. he is in receipt of a training allowance paid in connection with a youth training established under section 2 of the 1973 Act or section 2 of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990; or
 - c. he is a full time student within the meaning of section 44.0 (Students); or
 - d. he is not residing with the applicant because he has been a patient for a period of excess of 52 weeks, and for these purposes;
 - e. 'patient' has the meaning given within this scheme, and
 - f. where a person has been a patient for two or more distinct periods separated by one or more intervals each not exceeding 28 days, he shall be treated as having been a patient continuously for a period equal in duration to the total of those distinct periods;
 - g. he is not residing with the claimant because he is a member of the armed forces away on operations
- 58.8 No deduction shall be made in respect of a non-dependant;
- (a) who is on income support, state pension credit, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance;
 - (b) to whom Schedule 1 of the 1992 Act applies (persons disregarded for purposes of discount) but this sub-paragraph shall not apply to a non-dependant who is a student to whom paragraph 4 of that Schedule refers;



- (c) who is entitled to an award of universal credit where the award is calculated on the basis that the person does not have any earned income.”;
For the purposes of sub-paragraph (c), “earned income” has the meaning given in regulation 52 of the Universal Credit Regulations 2013.

- 58.9 In the application of paragraph 58.2 there shall be disregarded from his weekly gross income:
- a. any attendance allowance, disability living allowance or personal independence payment or an AFIP received by him;
 - b. any payment made under or by the Trusts, the Fund, the Eileen Trust , MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the Independent Living Fund (2006) which had his income fallen to be calculated under section 30 (calculation of income other than earnings) would have been disregarded under paragraph 24 of Schedule 4 (income in kind); and
 - c. any payment which had his income fallen to be calculated under section 30 would have been disregarded under paragraph 36 of Schedule 4 (payments made under certain trusts and certain other payments).

59.0 Council tax reduction taper (applies to persons defined within Class E)

- 59.1 The prescribed daily percentage for the purpose of calculating support as a percentage of excess of income over the applicable amount which is deducted from maximum council tax reduction, shall be 2 6/7 per cent. Where an applicant’s income exceeds their applicable amount, their council tax reduction shall be calculated by deducting their excess income multiplied by the taper from their maximum council tax reduction as defined within section 57 of this scheme

59A.0 Reduction of entitlement (Classes D, E & F)

- 59A.1 An entitlement calculated in accordance with this scheme shall be reduced by a percentage determined by the authority each year. The standard deduction shall apply to the council tax reduction calculated for all working age claimants. The deduction **will not apply** where the following circumstances apply;

- The applicant or partner is in receipt of a disability premium within the calculation of council tax reduction or within any means tested benefit (Housing Benefit, Income Support, Employment and Support Allowance (Income Related) or Job Seeker’s Allowance (Income Based)); or
- The applicant, partner or any dependant is in receipt of a enhanced disability premium within the calculation of council tax reduction or within any means tested benefit (Housing Benefit, Income Support, Employment and Support Allowance (Income Related) or Job Seeker’s Allowance (Income Based)); or
- The applicant or partner is in receipt of a support component within the calculation of council tax reduction or within their Employment and Support Allowance; or
- The applicant, partner is in receipt of a disabled child premium in respect of any dependant within the calculation of council tax reduction or within any means tested benefit (Housing Benefit, Income Support, or Job Seeker’s Allowance (Income Based)); or

60.0 Extended reductions

- 60.1 An applicant who is entitled to council tax reduction (by virtue of the general conditions of entitlement) shall be entitled to an extended reduction where;
- (a) the applicant or the applicant’s partner was entitled to a qualifying income- related benefit;
 - (b) entitlement to a qualifying income-related benefit ceased because the applicant or the applicant’s partner–
 - (i) commenced employment as an employed or self-employed earner;



- (ii) increased their earnings from such employment; or
- (iii) increased the number of hours worked in such employment, and that employment is or, as the case may be, increased earnings or increased number of hours are expected to last five weeks or more; and
- (c) the applicant or the applicant's partner had been entitled to and in receipt of a qualifying income-related benefit, jobseeker's allowance or a combination of those benefits for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks before the day on which the entitlement to a qualifying income-related benefit ceased.

60.2 For the purpose of paragraph 60.1(c), an applicant or an applicant's partner is to be treated as having been entitled to and in receipt of a qualifying income-related benefit or jobseeker's allowance during any period of less than five weeks in respect of which the applicant or the applicant's partner was not entitled to any of those benefits because the applicant or the applicant's partner was engaged in remunerative work as a consequence of their participation in an employment zone programme.

60.3 For the purpose of this section, where an applicant or an applicant's partner is entitled to and in receipt of joint-claim jobseeker's allowance they shall be treated as being entitled to and in receipt of jobseeker's allowance.

60.4 An applicant must be treated as entitled to council tax reduction by virtue of the general conditions of entitlement where—

- (a) the applicant ceased to be entitled to council tax reduction because the applicant vacated the dwelling in which the applicant was resident;
- (b) the day on which the applicant vacated the dwelling was either in the week in which entitlement to a qualifying income-related benefit ceased, or in the preceding week; and
- (c) entitlement to the qualifying income-related benefit ceased in any of the circumstances listed in paragraph 60.1(b).

60.5 This section shall not apply where, on the day before an applicant's entitlement to income support ceased, regulation 6(5) of the Income Support Regulations (remunerative work: housing costs) applied to that applicant.

60A.0 Duration of extended reduction period

60A.1 Where an applicant is entitled to an extended reduction, the extended reduction period starts on the first day of the reduction week immediately following the reduction week in which the applicant, or the applicant's partner, ceased to be entitled to a qualifying income-related benefit.

60A.2 For the purpose of paragraph (60A.1), an applicant or an applicant's partner ceases to be entitled to a qualifying income-related benefit on the day immediately following the last day of entitlement to that benefit.

60A.3 The extended reduction period ends;

- (a) at the end of a period of four weeks; or
- (b) on the date on which the applicant to whom the extended reduction is payable has no liability for council tax, if that occurs first.

60B.0 Amount of extended reduction

60B.1 For any week during the extended reduction period the amount of the extended reduction payable to an applicant shall be the higher of—

- (a) the amount of council tax reduction to which the applicant was entitled under the



- general conditions of entitlement in the last reduction week before the applicant or the applicant's partner ceased to be entitled to a qualifying income-related benefit;
- (b) the amount of council tax reduction to which the applicant would be entitled under the general conditions of entitlement for any reduction week during the extended reduction period, if section 60 (extended reductions) did not apply to the applicant; or
 - (c) the amount of council tax reduction to which the applicant's partner would be entitled under the general conditions of entitlement, if section 60 did not apply to the applicant.

60B.2 Paragraph 60B1 does not apply in the case of a mover.

60B.3 Where an applicant is in receipt of an extended reduction under this section and the applicant's partner makes a claim for council tax reduction, no amount of council tax reduction shall be payable by the appropriate authority during the extended reduction period.

60C Extended reductions – movers

60C.1 This section applies;

- (a) to a mover; and
- (b) from the Monday following the day of the move.

60C.2 The amount of the extended reduction payable from the Monday from which this section applies until the end of the extended reduction period shall be the amount of council tax reduction which was payable to the mover for the last reduction week before the mover, or the mover's partner, ceased to be entitled to a qualifying income-related benefit.

60C.3 Where a mover's liability to pay council tax in respect of the new dwelling is to the second authority, the extended reduction may take the form of a payment from the appropriate authority to;

- (a) the second authority; or
- (b) the mover directly.

60C.4 Where—

- (a) a mover, or the mover's partner, makes a claim for council tax reduction to the second authority after the mover, or the mover's partner, ceased to be entitled to a qualifying income-related benefit; and
- (b) the mover, or the mover's partner, is in receipt of an extended reduction from the appropriate authority, the second authority shall reduce the weekly amount of council tax reduction that the mover, or the mover's partner, is entitled to by a sum equal to the amount of the extended reduction until the end of the extended reduction period.

60D.0 Relationship between extended reduction and entitlement to council tax reduction under the general conditions of entitlement

60D.1 Where an applicant's council tax reduction award would have ended when the applicant ceased to be entitled to a qualifying income-related benefit in the circumstances listed in paragraph 60.1(b), that award will not cease until the end of the extended reduction period.

60D.2 Changes of circumstances and increases for exceptional circumstances shall not apply to any extended reduction payable in accordance with paragraph 60B.1(a) or 60C.2 (amount of extended reduction – movers).

61.0 Extended reductions (qualifying contributory benefits)

61.1 An applicant who is entitled to council tax reduction (by virtue of the general conditions of entitlement) shall be entitled to an extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) where;

- (a) the applicant or the applicant's partner was entitled to a qualifying contributory benefit;
- (b) entitlement to a qualifying contributory benefit ceased because the applicant or the

applicant's partner;

- (i) commenced employment as an employed or self-employed earner;
 - (ii) increased their earnings from such employment; or
 - (iii) increased the number of hours worked in such employment, and that employment is or, as the case may be, increased earnings or increased number of hours are expected to last five weeks or more;
- (c) the applicant or the applicant's partner had been entitled to and in receipt of a qualifying contributory benefit or a combination of qualifying contributory benefits for a continuous period of at least 26 weeks before the day on which the entitlement to a qualifying contributory benefit ceased; and
- (d) the applicant or the applicant's partner was not entitled to and not in receipt of a qualifying income-related benefit in the last reduction week in which the applicant, or the applicant's partner, was entitled to a qualifying contributory benefit.

61.2 An applicant must be treated as entitled to council tax reduction by virtue of the general conditions of entitlement where;

- (a) the applicant ceased to be entitled to council tax reduction because the applicant vacated the dwelling in which the applicant was resident;
- (b) the day on which the applicant vacated the dwelling was either in the week in which entitlement to a qualifying contributory benefit ceased, or in the preceding week; and
- (c) entitlement to the qualifying contributory benefit ceased in any of the circumstances listed in paragraph 61.1(b).

61A.0 Duration of extended reduction period (qualifying contributory benefits)

61A.1 Where an applicant is entitled to an extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits), the extended reduction period starts on the first day of the reduction week immediately following the reduction week in which the applicant, or the applicant's partner, ceased to be entitled to a qualifying contributory benefit.

61A.2 For the purpose of paragraph 61A.1, an applicant or an applicant's partner ceases to be entitled to a qualifying contributory benefit on the day immediately following the last day of entitlement to that benefit.

61A.3 The extended reduction period ends;

- (a) at the end of a period of four weeks; or
- (b) on the date on which the applicant to whom the extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) is payable has no liability for council tax, if that occurs first.

61B.0 Amount of extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits)

61B.1 For any week during the extended reduction period the amount of the extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) payable to an applicant shall be the higher of;

- (a) the amount of council tax reduction to which the applicant was entitled under the general conditions of entitlement in the last reduction week before the applicant or the applicant's partner ceased to be entitled to a qualifying contributory benefit;
- (b) the amount of council tax reduction to which the applicant would be entitled under the general conditions of entitlement for any reduction week during the extended reduction period, if section 61 (extended reductions (qualifying contributory benefits)) did not apply to the applicant; or
- (c) the amount of council tax reduction to which the applicant's partner would be entitled under the general conditions of entitlement, if section 61 did not apply to the applicant.

61B.2 Paragraph 61B.1 does not apply in the case of a mover.

61B.3 Where an applicant is in receipt of an extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) under this section and the applicant's partner makes a claim for council tax reduction, no



amount of council tax reduction shall be payable by the appropriate authority during the extended reduction period.

61C.0 Extended reductions (qualifying contributory benefits) – movers

61C.1 This section applies;

- (a) to a mover; and
- (b) from the Monday following the day of the move.

61C.2 The amount of the extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefit) payable from the Monday from which this section applies until the end of the extended reduction period shall be the amount of council tax reduction which was payable to the mover for the last reduction week before the mover, or the mover's partner, ceased to be entitled to a qualifying contributory benefit.

61C.3 Where a mover's liability to pay council tax in respect of the new dwelling is to the second authority, the extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) may take the form of a payment from the appropriate authority to–

- (a) the second authority; or
- (b) the mover directly.

61C.4 Where

- (a) a mover, or the mover's partner, makes a claim for council tax reduction to the second authority after the mover, or the mover's partner, ceased to be entitled to a qualifying contributory benefit; and
- (b) the mover, or the mover's partner, is in receipt of an extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) from the appropriate authority, the second authority shall reduce the weekly amount of council tax reduction that the mover, or the mover's partner, is entitled to by a sum equal to the amount of the extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) until the end of the extended reduction period.

61D.0 Relationship between extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) and entitlement to council tax reduction under the general conditions of entitlement

61D.1 Where an applicant's council tax reduction award would have ended when the applicant ceased to be entitled to a qualifying contributory benefit in the circumstances listed in paragraph 61.1 (b), that award will not cease until the end of the extended reduction period.

61D.2 Changes of circumstances and increases for exceptional circumstances shall not apply to any extended reduction (qualifying contributory benefits) payable in accordance with paragraph 61B.1(a) or 61C.2 (amount of extended reduction– movers).

61E.0 Extended reductions: movers into the authority's area²⁵

61E.1 Where;

- a. an application is made to the authority for a reduction under its scheme, and
- b. the applicant or the partner of the applicant, is in receipt of an extended reduction from;
 - (i) another billing authority in England; or
 - (ii) a billing authority in Wales,the current authority must reduce any reduction to which the applicant is entitled under its Council Tax Reduction scheme by the amount of that extended reduction.

62.0 Alternative maximum council tax reduction (Second Adult Reduction) (Class F)

62.1 Subject to paragraphs 62.2 and 62.3, the alternative maximum council tax reduction where the

²⁵ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012



conditions are satisfied shall be the amount determined in accordance with Schedule 2.

62.2 Subject to paragraph 62.3, where an applicant is jointly and severally liable for council tax in respect of a dwelling in which he is resident with one or more other persons, in determining the alternative maximum council tax reduction in his case, the amount determined in accordance with Schedule 2 shall be divided by the number of persons who are jointly and severally liable for that tax.

62.3 Where an applicant is jointly and severally liable for council tax in respect of a dwelling with only his partner, solely by virtue of section 9, 77 or 77A of the 1992 Act (liability of spouses and civil partners), paragraph 62.2 shall not apply in his case.

63.0 Residents of a dwelling to whom Second Adult Reduction does not apply

63.1 Entitlement to an alternative maximum council tax reduction (Second Adult Rebate) shall not apply in respect of any person referred to in the following paragraphs namely;

- (a) a person who is liable for council tax solely in consequence of the provisions of sections 9, 77 and 77A of the 1992 Act (spouse's or civil partner's joint and several liability for tax);
- (b) a person who is residing with a couple or with the members of a polygamous marriage where the applicant for council tax reduction is a member of that couple or of that marriage and;
 - (i) in the case of a couple, neither member of that couple is a person who, in accordance with Schedule 1 to the 1992 Act, falls to be disregarded for the purposes of discount; or
 - (ii) in the case of a polygamous marriage, two or more members of that marriage are not persons who, in accordance with Schedule 1 to the 1992 Act, fall to be disregarded for the purposes of discount;
- (c) a person who jointly with the applicant for support falls within the same paragraph of sections 6(2)(a) to (e) or 75(2)(a) to (e) of the 1992 Act (persons liable to pay council tax) as applies in the case of the applicant;
- (d) a person who is residing with two or more persons both or all of whom fall within the same paragraph of sections 6(2)(a) to (e) or 75(2)(a) to (e) of the 1992 Act and two or more of those persons are not persons who, in accordance with Schedule 1 to the 1992 Act, fall to be disregarded for the purposes of discount.



Sections 64 – 67

Dates on which entitlement and changes of circumstances are to take effect



64.0 Date on which entitlement is to begin

- 64.1 Subject to paragraph 64.2, any person to whom or in respect of whom a claim for council tax reduction is made and who is otherwise entitled to that support shall be so entitled from the reduction week following the date on which that claim is made or is treated as made.
- 64.2 Where a person is otherwise entitled to council tax reduction and becomes liable for the first time for the authority's council tax in respect of a dwelling of which he is a resident in the reduction week in which his claim is made or is treated as made, he shall be so entitled from that reduction week.

65.0 - 66.0 Not Used

67.0 Date on which change of circumstances is to take effect

- 67.1 Except in cases where section 24 (disregard of changes in tax, contributions, etc.) applies and subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, a change of circumstances which affects entitlement to, or the amount of, a reduction under the authority's scheme ("change of circumstances"), takes effect from the first day of the reduction week following the date on which the change actually occurs, and where that change is cessation of entitlement to any benefit under the benefit Acts, the date on which the change actually occurs shall be the day immediately following the last day of entitlement to that benefit.
- 67.2 Subject to paragraph (3), where the change of circumstances is a change in the amount of council tax payable, it takes effect from the day on which it actually occurs.
- 67.3 Where the change of circumstances is a change in the amount a person is liable to pay in respect of council tax in consequence of regulations under section 13 of the 1992 Act (reduced amounts of council tax) or changes in the discount to which a dwelling may be subject under sections 11 or 12 of that Act, it shall take effect from the day on which the change in amount has effect.
- 67.4 Where the change of circumstances is the applicant's acquisition of a partner, the change takes effect on the day on which the acquisition takes place.
- 67.5 Where the change of circumstances is the death of an applicant's partner or their separation, it takes effect on the day the death or separation occurs.
- 67.6 If two or more changes of circumstances occurring in the same reduction week would, but for this paragraph, take effect in different reduction weeks in accordance with paragraphs (1) to (5) they take effect from the day to which the appropriate paragraph from (2) to (5) above refers, or, where more than one day is concerned, from the earlier day.
- 67.7 Where the change of circumstances is that income, or an increase in the amount of income, other than a benefit or an increase in the amount of a benefit under the Act, is paid in respect of a past period and there was no entitlement to income of that amount during that period, the change of circumstances shall take effect from the first day on which such income, had it been paid in that period at intervals appropriate to that income, would have fallen to be taken into account for the purposes of this scheme.
- 67.8 Without prejudice to paragraph (7), where the change of circumstances is the payment of income, or arrears of income, in respect of a past period, the change of circumstances takes effect from the first day on which such income, had it been timeously paid in that period at intervals appropriate to that income, would have fallen to be taken into account for the purposes of this scheme.



Sections 68– 74A

Claiming and the treatment of claims for Council tax reduction purposes

68.0 Making an application²⁶

- 68.1 In the case of a couple or members of a polygamous marriage an application is to be made by whichever one of them they agree should so apply or, in default of agreement, by such one of them as the authority determines.
- 68.2 Where a person who is liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling is unable for the time being to act, and;
- (a) a deputy has been appointed by the Court of Protection with power to claim, or as the case may be, receive benefit on his behalf; or
 - (b) in Scotland, his estate is being administered by a judicial factor or any guardian acting or appointed under the Adults with Incapacity (Scotland) Act 2000 who has power to apply or, as the case may be, receive benefit on his behalf; or
 - (c) an attorney with a general power or a power to apply or, as the case may be, receive benefit, has been appointed by that person under the Powers of Attorney Act 1971, the Enduring Powers of Attorney Act 1985 or the Mental Capacity Act 2005 or otherwise,
- that deputy, judicial factor, guardian or attorney, as the case may be, may make an application on behalf of that person.
- 68.3 Where a person who is liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling is unable for the time being to act and sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to him, the authority may, upon written application made to them by a person who, if a natural person, is over the age of 18, appoint that person to exercise on behalf of the person who is unable to act, any right to which that person might be entitled under the authority's scheme and to receive and deal on his behalf with any sums payable to him.
- 68.4 Where a person who is liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling is for the time being unable to act and the Secretary of State has appointed a person to act on his behalf under regulation 33 of the Social Security (Claims and Payments) Regulations 1987 (persons unable to act), the authority may if that person agrees, treat him as if he had been appointed by them under sub-paragraph (3).
- 68.5 Where the authority has made an appointment under sub-paragraph (3) or treated a person as an appointee under sub-paragraph (4);
- (a) it may at any time revoke the appointment;
 - (b) the person appointed may resign his office after having given 4 weeks notice in writing to the authority of his intention to do so;
 - (c) any such appointment terminates when the authority is notified of the appointment of a person mentioned in sub-paragraph (2).
- 68.6 Anything required by the authority's scheme to be done by or to any person who is for the time being unable to act may be done by or to the persons mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) above or by or to the person appointed or treated as appointed under this paragraph and the receipt of any such person so appointed shall be a good discharge to the authority for any sum paid.
- 68.7 The authority must;
- (a) inform any person making an application of the duty imposed by paragraph 9(1)(a);
 - (b) explain the possible consequences (including prosecution) of failing to comply with that duty; and
 - (c) set out the circumstances a change in which might affect entitlement to the reduction or its amount.

²⁶ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012



69.0 Procedure by which a person may apply for a reduction under the authority's scheme²⁷

69.1. Paragraphs 2 to 7 apply to an application made under the authority's scheme.

69.2. An application may be made;

- (a) in writing,
- (b) by means of an electronic communication in accordance with sections 101 – 106A of this scheme, or
- (c) where the authority has published a telephone number for the purpose of receiving such applications, by telephone.

69.3 (1) An application which is made in writing must be made to the designated office on a properly completed form.

(2) The form must be provided free of charge by the authority for the purpose.

69.4 (1) Where an application made in writing is defective because—

- (a) it was made on the form supplied for the purpose but that form is not accepted by the authority as being properly completed; or
- (b) it was made in writing but not on the form approved for the purpose and the authority does not accept the application as being in a written form which is sufficient in the circumstances of the case having regard to the sufficiency of the written information and evidence,

the authority may, in a case to which sub-paragraph (a) applies, request the applicant to complete the defective application or, in the case to which sub-paragraph (b) applies, supply the applicant with the approved form or request further information and evidence.

(2) An application made on a form provided by the authority is properly completed if it is completed in accordance with the instructions on the form, including any instructions to provide information and evidence in connection with the application.

69.5. (1) If an application made by electronic communication is defective the authority must provide the person making the application with an opportunity to correct the defect.

(2) An application made by electronic communication is defective if the applicant does not provide all the information the authority requires.

69.6. In a particular case the authority may determine that an application made by telephone is only valid if the person making the application approves a written statement of his circumstances provided by the authority.

69.7 (1) If an application made by telephone is defective the authority must provide the person making the application with an opportunity to correct the defect.

(2) An application made by telephone is defective if the applicant does not provide all the information the authority requests during the telephone call.

69.8 Notwithstanding other paragraphs within this section, the authority will determine the method by which claims are to be made as well as where claims should be sent or delivered.

(1) Where an applicant ;

- (a) makes an application under this scheme which includes (or which he subsequently requests should include) a period before the

²⁷ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

application is made; and

- (b) from a day in that period, up to the date he made the application (or subsequently requested that the application should include a past period), the applicant had continuous good cause for failing to make an application (or request that the application should include that period),

the application is to be treated as made on the date determined in accordance with sub-paragraph (2).

- (2) That date is the latest of;
- a. the first day from which the applicant had continuous good cause;
 - b. the day 6 months before the date the application was made;
 - c. the day 6 months before the date when the applicant requested that the application should include a past period.

69A.0 Date on which an application is made

69A.1 Subject to sub-paragraph (7), the date on which an application is made is;

(a) in a case where;

- (i) an award of state pension credit which comprises a guarantee credit has been made to the applicant or his partner, and
- (ii) the application for a reduction is made within one month of the date on which the claim for that state pension credit which comprises a guarantee credit was received at the appropriate DWP office,

the first day of entitlement to state pension credit which comprises a guarantee credit arising from that claim;

(b) in a case where

- (i) an applicant or his partner is a person in receipt of a guarantee credit,
- (ii) the applicant becomes liable for the first time to pay council tax in respect of the dwelling he occupies as his home, and
- (iii) the application is received at the designated office within one month of the date of the change,

the date on which the change takes place;

(c) in a case where;

- (i) an award of income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance or an award of universal credit has been made to the applicant or his partner, and
- (ii) the application is made within one month of the date on which the claim for that income support, jobseeker's allowance, employment and support allowance or universal credit was received,

the first day of entitlement to income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance, an income-related employment and support allowance or universal credit arising from that claim;

(d) in a case where;

- (i) an applicant or his partner is a person on income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance or has an award of universal credit,
- (ii) the applicant becomes liable for the first time to pay council tax in respect of the dwelling which he occupies as his home, and
- (iii) the application is received at the designated office within one month of the date of the change,

the date on which the change takes place;

(e) in a case where;

- (i) an applicant is the former partner of a person who was, at the date of his death or their separation, entitled to a reduction under the authority's scheme, and

(ii) the applicant makes an application for a reduction under that scheme within one month of the date of the death or the separation, the date of the death or separation;

(f) except where paragraph (a), (b) or (e) is satisfied, in a case where a properly completed application is received within one month (or such longer period as the authority considers reasonable) of the date on which an application form was issued to an applicant following the applicant first notifying, by whatever means, the authority of an intention to make an application, the date of first notification;

(g) in any other case, the date on which an application is received at the designated office.

69A.2 For the purposes only of sub-paragraph (1)(c) a person who has been awarded an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance is to be treated as entitled to that allowance for any days which immediately precede the first day in that award and on which he would, but for regulations made under;

(a) in the case of income-based jobseeker's allowance, paragraph 4 of Schedule 1 to the Jobseekers Act 1995 (waiting days); or

(b) in the case of income-related employment and support allowance, paragraph 2 of Schedule 2 to the Welfare Reform Act 2007 (waiting days), have been entitled to that allowance.

69A.3 Where there is a defect in an applications by telephone;

(a) is corrected within one month (or such longer period as the authority considers reasonable) of the date the authority last drew attention to it, the authority must treat the application as if it had been duly made in the first instance;

(b) is not corrected within one month (or such longer period as the authority considers reasonable) of the date the authority last drew attention to it, the authority must treat the application as if it had been duly made in the first instance where it considers it has sufficient information to decide the application.

69A.4 The authority is to treat a defective application as if it had been validly made in the first instance if, in any particular case, the conditions specified in sub-paragraph (5)(a), (b) or (c) are satisfied.

69A.5 The conditions are that—

(a) where the authority receives the properly completed application or the information requested to complete it or the evidence within one month of the request, or such longer period as the authority may consider reasonable; or

(b) where an application is not on approved form or further information requested by authority applies;

(i) the approved form sent to the applicant is received at the offices of the authority properly completed within one month of it having been sent to him; or, as the case may be;

(ii) the applicant supplies whatever information or evidence was requested within one month of the request; or,

in either case, within such longer period as the authority may consider reasonable; or

(c) where the authority has requested further information, the authority receives at its offices the properly completed application or the information requested to complete it within one month of the request or within such longer period as the authority considers reasonable.

69A.6 Except in the case of an application made by a person treated as not being in Great Britain, where a person has not become liable for council tax to the authority but it is anticipated that he will become so liable within the period of 8 weeks (the relevant period), he may apply for a reduction under that authority's scheme at any time in that period in respect of that tax and, provided that liability arises within the relevant period, the authority must treat the application as having been made on the day on which the liability for the tax arises.

69A.7 Except in the case of an application made by a person treated as not being in Great Britain, where the applicant is not entitled to a reduction under the authority's scheme in the

reduction week immediately following the date of his application but the authority is of the opinion that unless there is a change of circumstances he will be entitled to a reduction under its scheme for a period beginning not later than;

- (a) in the case of an application made by;
 - (i) a pensioner, or
 - (ii) a person who has attained, or whose partner has attained, the age which is 17 weeks younger than the qualifying age for state pension credit, the seventeenth reduction week following the date on which the application is made, or
- (b) in the case of an application made by a person who is not a pensioner, the thirteenth reduction week following the date on which the application is made, the authority may treat the application as made on a date in the reduction week immediately preceding the first reduction week of that period of entitlement and award a reduction accordingly.

69A.8 In this paragraph “appropriate DWP office” means an office of the Department for Work and Pensions dealing with state pension credit or an office which is normally open to the public for the receipt of claims of income support, a job seekers allowance or an employment and support allowance.

70.0 Submission of evidence electronically

70.1 The authority may accept such evidence, documents and certificates to support the claim electronically where it feels that this would be acceptable given the nature of the claim

71.0 Use of telephone provided evidence

71.1 The authority may accept such evidence to support the claim by telephone where it feels that this would be acceptable given the nature of the claim

72.0 Information and evidence²⁸

72.1 Subject to sub-paragraph (3), a person who makes an application for a reduction under an authority’s scheme must satisfy sub-paragraph (2) in relation both to himself and to any other person in respect of whom he is making the application.

72.2 This sub-paragraph is satisfied in relation to a person if—

- (a) the application is accompanied by;
 - (i) a statement of the person’s national insurance number and information or evidence establishing that that number has been allocated to the person; or
 - (ii) information or evidence enabling the authority to ascertain the national insurance number that has been allocated to the person; or
- (b) the person has made an application for a national insurance number to be allocated to him and the application for the reduction is accompanied by;
 - (i) evidence of the application for a national insurance number to be so allocated; and
 - (ii) the information or evidence enabling it to be so allocated.

72.3 Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply;

- (a) in the case of a child or young person in respect of whom an application for a reduction is made;
- (b) to a person who;
 - (i) is a person treated as not being in Great Britain for the purposes of this scheme;
 - (ii) is subject to immigration control within the meaning of section 115(9)(a) of the Immigration and Asylum Act 1999; and

²⁸ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

(iii) has not previously been allocated a national insurance number.

- 72.4 Subject to sub-paragraph (5), a person who makes an application, or a person to whom a reduction under the authority's scheme has been awarded, must furnish such certificates, documents, information and evidence in connection with the application or the award, or any question arising out of the application or the award, as may reasonably be required by that authority in order to determine that person's entitlement to, or continuing entitlement to a reduction under its scheme and must do so within one month of the authority requiring him to do so or such longer period as the authority may consider reasonable.
- 72.5 Nothing in this paragraph requires a person who is a pensioner to furnish any certificates, documents, information or evidence relating to a payment to which sub-paragraph (7) applies.
- 72.6 Where the authority makes a request under sub-paragraph (4), it must;
- (a) inform the applicant or the person to whom a reduction under its scheme has been awarded of his duty under paragraph 9 (duty to notify change of circumstances) to notify the authority of any change of circumstances; and
 - (b) without prejudice to the extent of the duty owed under paragraph 9, indicate to him either orally or by notice or by reference to some other document available to him on application and without charge, the kind of change of circumstances which must be notified.
- 72.7 This sub-paragraph applies to any of the following payments;
- (a) a payment which is made under or by the Trusts, the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the London Bombings Relief Charitable Fund;
 - (b) a payment which is disregarded under paragraph 24 of Schedule 5, other than a payment under the Independent Living Fund (2006);
 - (c) a payment which is disregarded under paragraph 58.9.
- 72.8 Where an applicant or a person to whom a reduction under the authority's scheme has been awarded or any partner has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit and is a member of, or a person deriving entitlement to a pension under, a personal pension scheme, he must where the authority so requires furnish the following information;
- (a) the name and address of the pension fund holder;
 - (b) such other information including any reference or policy number as is needed to enable the personal pension scheme to be identified.
- 73.0 Amendment and withdrawal of application²⁹**
- 73.1 A person who has made an application may amend it at any time before a decision has been made on it by a notice in writing delivered or sent to the designated office.
- 73.2 Where the application was made by telephone the amendment may also be made by telephone.
- 73.3 Any application amended is to be treated as if it had been amended in the first instance.
- 73.4 A person who has made an application may withdraw it by notice to the designated office at any time before a decision has been made on it.
- 73.5 Where the application was made by telephone, the withdrawal may also be made by telephone.

²⁹ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012



- 73.6 Any notice of withdrawal given in accordance with sub-paragraph (4) or (5) has effect when it is received.
- 73.7 Where a person, by telephone, amends or withdraws an application the person must (if required to do so by the authority) confirm the amendment or withdrawal by a notice in writing delivered or sent to the designated office.
- 74.0 Duty to notify changes of circumstances³⁰**
- 74.1 Subject to sub-paragraphs (3), (6) and (7), an applicant (or any person acting on his behalf) must comply with sub-paragraph (2) if there is a relevant change of circumstances at any time;
- (a) between the making of an application and a decision being made on it, or
 - (b) after the decision is made (where the decision is that the applicant is entitled to a reduction under the authority's scheme) including at any time while the applicant is in receipt of such a reduction.
- 74.2 The applicant (or any person acting on his behalf) must notify any change of circumstances which the applicant (or that person) might reasonably be expected to know might affect his entitlement to, or the amount of, a reduction under the authority's scheme (a "relevant change of circumstances") by giving notice to the authority;
- (a) in writing; or
 - (b) by telephone—
 - (i) where the authority has published a telephone number for that purpose unless the authority determines that in any particular case or class of case notification may not be given by telephone; or
 - (ii) in any case or class of case where the authority determines that notice may be given by telephone; or
 - (c) by any other means which the authority agrees to accept in any particular case, within a period of 21 days beginning with the day on which the change occurs, or as soon as reasonably practicable after the change occurs, whichever is later.
- 74.3 The duty imposed on a person by sub-paragraph (1) does not extend to notifying
- (a) changes in the amount of council tax payable to the authority;
 - (b) changes in the age of the applicant or that of any member of his family;
 - (c) in the case of an applicant in receipt of a relevant benefit, changes in circumstances which affect the amount of the benefit but not the amount of the reduction under the authority's scheme to which he is entitled, other than the cessation of that entitlement to the benefit.
- 74.4 For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3)(c) "relevant benefit" means income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance or universal credit.
- 74.5 Notwithstanding sub-paragraph (3)(b) or (c) an applicant is required by sub-paragraph (1) to notify the authority of any change in the composition of his family arising from the fact that a person who was a member of his family is now no longer such a person because he has ceased to be a child or young person.
- 74.6 The duty imposed on a person by sub-paragraph (1) includes in the case of a person falling within alternative maximum council tax reduction, giving written notice to the authority of changes which occur in the number of adults in the dwelling or in their total gross incomes and, where any such adult ceases to be in receipt of state pension credit, the date when this occurs.

³⁰ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

- 74.7 A person who has been awarded a reduction under the authority's scheme who is also on state pension credit must report;
- (a) changes affecting the residence or income of any non-dependant normally residing with the applicant or with whom the applicant normally resides;
 - (b) any absence from the dwelling which exceeds or is likely to exceed 13 weeks.
- 74.8 In addition to the changes required to be reported under sub-paragraph (7), a person whose state pension credit comprises only a savings credit must also report—
- (a) changes affecting a child living with him which may result in a change in the amount of reduction under the authority's scheme allowed in his case, but not changes in the age of the child;
 - (b) any change in the amount of the applicant's capital to be taken into account which does or may take the amount of his capital to more than £16,000;
 - (c) any change in the income or capital of;
 - (i) a non-dependant whose income and capital are treated as belonging to the applicant; or
 - (ii) a person to whom their partner is treated as member of the household, and whether such a person or, as the case may be, non-dependant stops living or begins or resumes living with the applicant.
- 74.9 A person who is entitled to a reduction under the authority's scheme and on state pension credit need only report to the authority the changes specified in sub-paragraphs (7) and (8).
- 74.10 All changes in circumstances should be notified to the authority in writing (or by whatever format agreed by the authority) within one calendar month of the happening of the event or change in circumstance. This timescale may be extended at the discretion of the authority. Where such a change is not received within that timescale and where the change would increase the level of reduction payable, the authority may use a date later than the actual change of circumstances



Sections 75- 90

Decisions, decision notices and awards of Council tax reduction

75.0 Decisions by the authority³¹

75.1 The authority must make a decision on an application under its scheme within 14 days of paragraphs 4 and 7 and section 69 being satisfied, or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter.

76.0 Notification of decision³²

76.1 The authority must notify in writing any person affected by a decision made by it under its scheme;

(a) in the case of a decision on an application, forthwith or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter;

(b) in any other case, within 14 days of that decision or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter.

76.2 Where the decision is to award a reduction, the notification under sub-paragraph (1) must include a statement;

(a) informing the person affected of the duty imposed by 74.1;

(b) explaining the possible consequences (including prosecution) of failing to comply with that duty; and

(c) setting out the circumstances a change in which might affect entitlement to the reduction or its amount.

76.3 Where the decision is to award a reduction, the notification under sub-paragraph (1) must include a statement as to how that entitlement is to be discharged.

76.4 In any case, the notification under sub-paragraph (1) must inform the person affected of the procedure by which an appeal may be made and must refer the person to the provisions in the authority's scheme relating to the procedure for making an appeal.

76.5 A person affected to whom the authority sends or delivers a notification of decision may, within one month of the date of the notification of that decision request in writing the authority to provide a written statement setting out the reasons for its decision on any matter set out in the notice.

76.6 The written statement referred to in sub-paragraph (5) must be sent to the person requesting it within 14 days or as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter.

76.7 For the purposes of this paragraph a person is to be treated as a person affected by a decision of the authority under its scheme where the rights, duties or obligations of that person are affected by that decision and the person falls within sub-paragraph (8).

76.8 This sub-paragraph applies to—

(a) the applicant;

(b) in the case of a person who is liable to pay council tax in respect of a dwelling and is unable for the time being to act;

(i) a deputy appointed by the Court of Protection with power to claim, or as the case may be, receive benefit on his behalf; or

(ii) in Scotland, a judicial factor or any guardian acting or appointed under the

Adults with Incapacity (Scotland) Act 2000(3) who has power to apply or, as the case may be, receive benefit on the person's behalf; or

(iii) an attorney with a general power or a power to apply or, as the case may be,

³¹ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

³² Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012



receive benefit, has been appointed by that person under the Powers of Attorney Act 1971, the Enduring Powers of Attorney Act 1985 or the Mental Capacity Act 2005 or otherwise,

(c) a person appointed by the authority to act for a person unable to act.

77.0 Time and manner of granting council tax reduction³³

77.1 Where a person is entitled to a reduction under this authority's scheme in respect of his liability for the authority's council tax as it has effect in respect of a chargeable financial year ("the chargeable year"), the authority must discharge his entitlement;

- (a) by reducing, so far as possible, the amount of his liability to which regulation 20(2) of the Council Tax (Administration and Enforcement) Regulations 1992 refers; or
- (b) where;
 - (i) such a reduction is not possible; or
 - (ii) such a reduction would be insufficient to discharge the entitlement to a reduction under the authority's scheme; or
 - (iii) the person entitled to the reduction is jointly and severally liable for the council tax and the authority determines that such a reduction would be inappropriate, by making payment to him of the amount of reduction to which he is entitled, rounded where necessary to the nearest penny.

77.2 The authority must notify the person entitled to a reduction under this scheme of the amount of that reduction and how his entitlement is to be discharged in pursuance of paragraph (1).

77.3 In a case to which paragraph (1)(b) refers;

- (a) if the amount of the council tax for which he remains liable in respect of the chargeable year, after any reduction to which sub-paragraph (1)(a) refers has been made, is insufficient to enable his entitlement to a reduction under the authority's scheme in respect thereof to be discharged, upon the final instalment of that tax becoming due any outstanding reduction;
 - (i) must be paid to that person if he so requires; or
 - (ii) in any other case must (as the authority determines) either be repaid or credited against any subsequent liability of the person to make a payment in respect of the authority's council tax as it has effect for any subsequent year;
- (b) if that person has ceased to be liable for the authority's council tax and has discharged the liability for that tax, the outstanding balance (if any) of the reduction under the authority's scheme in respect thereof must be paid within 14 days or, if that is not reasonably practicable, as soon as practicable thereafter
- (c) in any other case, the reduction under the authority's scheme must be paid within 14 days of the receipt of the application at the offices of the authority or, if that is not reasonably practicable, as soon as practicable thereafter.

77.4 For the purposes of this paragraph "instalment" means any instalment of the authority's council tax to which regulation 19 of the Council Tax (Administration and Enforcement) Regulations 1992 refers (council tax payments).

78.0 Persons to whom support is to be paid³⁴

78.1 Subject to section 80 (payment on death) and paragraph (2), any payment of the amount

³³ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

³⁴ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012



of a reduction must be made to that person.

78.2 Where a person other than a person who is entitled to a reduction under this authority's scheme made the application for the reduction and that first person is a person acting pursuant to an appointment or is treated as having been so appointed, the amount of the reduction may be paid to that person.

79.0 Shortfall in support / reduction³⁵

79.1 Where, on the revision of a decision allowing a reduction under the authority's scheme to a person, it is determined that the amount allowed was less than the amount to which that person was entitled, the authority must either;

- (a) make good any shortfall in reduction which is due to that person, by reducing so far as possible the next and any subsequent payments he is liable to make in respect of the council tax of the authority as it has effect for the chargeable financial year until that shortfall is made good; or
- (b) where this is not possible or the person concerned so requests, pay the amount of any shortfall in reduction due to that person within 14 days of the revision of the decision being made or if that is not reasonable practicable, as soon as possible afterwards.

80.0 Payment on the death of the person entitled³⁶

80.1 Where the person entitled to any reduction under this scheme has died and it is not possible to award the reduction which is due in the form of a reduction of the council tax for which he was liable, the authority must make payment of the amount of the reduction to his executor or administrator in accordance with regulation 58(4) of the Council Tax (Administration and Enforcement) Regulations 1992.

81.0 Offsetting

81.1 Where a person has been allowed or paid a sum of council tax reduction under a decision which is subsequently revised or further revised, any sum allowed or paid in respect of a period covered by the subsequent decision shall be offset against arrears of entitlement under the subsequent decision except to the extent that the sum exceeds the arrears and shall be treated as properly awarded or paid on account of them.

82.0 Payment where there is joint and several liability³⁷

82.1 Where;

- (a) a person is entitled to a reduction under the authority's scheme in respect of his liability for the authority's council tax as it has effect in respect of a chargeable financial year;
- (b) the person entitled to the reduction is jointly and severally liable for the council tax; and
- (c) the authority determines that discharging his entitlement by reducing the amount of his liability to which regulation 20(2) of the Council Tax (Administration and Enforcement) Regulations 1992(7) refers would be inappropriate,

it may make a payment to him of the amount of the reduction to which he is entitled, rounded where necessary to the nearest penny.

³⁵ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

³⁶ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

³⁷ Inserted by Schedule 8 of the Council Tax Reductions Scheme (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012



82.2 Subject to sub-paragraph (3) any payment made under sub-paragraph (1) must be made to the person who is entitled to the reduction.

82.3 Where a person other than a person who is entitled to a reduction under the authority's scheme made the application and that first person is a person acting pursuant to an appointment under paragraph 4(3) or is treated as having been so appointed by virtue of paragraph 4(4), the amount of the reduction may be paid to that person.

83.0 – 90.0 Not used



Sections 91 – 94

Collection, holding and forwarding of information for Council tax reduction purposes

91.0 Use of information from and to the Department of Work and Pensions (DWP) and Her Majesty's Revenues and Customs (HMRC)

91.1 The authority will use information provided by the DWP and HMRC for the purposes of Council Tax Reduction, council tax liability, billing, administration and enforcement as outlined within Schedule 2 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992 as amended by the Local Government Finance Act 2012 and the Social Security (Information-sharing in relation to Welfare Services etc.) (Amendment) Regulations 2013

91.2 Where required by the relevant department and where required by law, the authority will share information obtained for Council Tax Reduction with the DWP or HMRC as appropriate and in accordance with Data Protections requirements³⁸.

92.0 Collection of information

92.1 The authority may receive and obtain information and evidence relating to claims for council tax reduction, the council may receive or obtain the information or evidence from–

- (a) persons making claims for council tax reduction;
- (b) other persons in connection with such claims;
- (c) other local authorities; or
- (d) central government departments including the DWP and HMRC

92.2 The authority may verify relevant information supplied to, or obtained.

93.0 Recording and holding information

93.1 The authority may

- (a) may make a record of such information; and
- (b) may hold that information, whether as supplied or obtained or recorded, for the purpose of forwarding it to the person or authority for the time being administering council tax reduction.

94.0 Forwarding of information

94.1 The authority may forward it to the person or authority for the time being administering claims to or awards of council tax reduction to which the relevant information relates, being

- (i) a local authority;
- (ii) a person providing services to a local authority; or
- (iii) a person authorised to exercise any function of a local authority relating to council tax reduction.

³⁸ Data Retention and Investigatory Powers Act 2014 and Data Retention Regulations 2014



Sections 95 – 98

Revisions, Written Statements, Termination of Council tax reduction

95.0 Persons affected by Decisions

- 95.1 A person is to be treated as a person affected by a relevant decision of the authority where that person is;
- a. an applicant;
 - b. in the case of a person who is liable to make payments in respect of a dwelling and is unable for the time being to act
 - (i) a Deputy appointed by the Court of Protection with power to claim, or as the case may be, receive benefit or support on his behalf,
 - (ii) in Scotland, a tutor, curator, judicial factor or other guardian acting or appointed in terms of law administering that person's estate, or
 - (iii) an attorney with a general power or a power to receive benefit or support appointed by the person liable to make those payments under the Powers of Attorney Act 1971, the Enduring Powers of Attorney Act 1985 or the Mental Capacity Act 2005 or otherwise;
 - c. a person appointed by the authority under this scheme;

96.0 Revisions of Decisions

- 96.1 Subject to the provisions in this scheme, a relevant decision ('the original decision') may be revised or further revised by the authority, which made the decision where the person affected makes an application for a revision within;
- (i) one month of the date of notification of the original decision; or
 - (ii) such extended time as the authority may allow.
- 96.2 The authority may revise or further revise that original decision at any time. Where further information is required from the person affected, the authority shall request such information and evidence as it feels is reasonable. Such information must be supplied within;
- i) one month of the date of notification of the additional information; or
 - (ii) such extended time as the authority may allow

97.0 Written Statements

- 97.1 Subject to the provisions in the scheme, the authority may upon a written request issue a written statement to a person affected to further explain the decision of the authority in relation to Council tax reduction. The request must be received within one month of the date of the notification being issued by the authority.

98.0 Terminations

- 98.1 The authority may terminate support in whole or in part the Council tax reduction where it appears to the authority that an issue arises whether;
- a. the conditions for entitlement to Council tax reduction are or were fulfilled; or
 - b. a decision as to an award of such a support should be revised or superseded.
- 98.2 The authority may terminate, in whole or in part the Council tax reduction where it appears to the authority that an issue arises whether;
- a. the conditions for entitlement to Council tax reduction are or were fulfilled; or
 - b. a decision as to an award of such a support should be revised or superseded.
- Where the person fails to provide information to the authority as requested in relation to any matter relating to their liability for Council Tax



Section 99

Appeals against the authority's decisions

99.0 Procedure by which a person may make an appeal against certain decisions of the authority³⁹

- 99.1 A person who is aggrieved by a decision of the authority, which affects;
- (a) the person's entitlement to a reduction under its scheme, or
 - (b) the amount of any reduction to which that person is entitled,
- may serve a written notice on the authority stating the matter by which, and the grounds on which, he is aggrieved.
- 99.2 The authority must
- (a) consider the matter to which the notice relates;
 - (b) notify the aggrieved person in writing;
 - (i) that the ground is not well founded, giving reasons for that belief; or
 - (ii) that steps have been taken to deal with the grievance, stating the steps taken.
- 99.3 Where, following notification under sub-paragraph (2)(b)(i) or (ii), the person is still aggrieved, or if the authority fails to notify the person aggrieved in accordance with sub-paragraph (2)(b) within two months of the service of his notice, he may appeal to the valuation tribunal under section 16 of the 1992 Act⁴⁰.

³⁹ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

⁴⁰ As amended by the Tribunal Procedure (Amendment No 3) Rules 2014



Section 100

Procedure for applying for a discretionary reduction



100.0 Procedure for an application to the authority for a reduction under section 13A(1)(c) of the 1992 Act⁴¹

- 100.1 An application to the authority for a reduction under section 13A(1)(c) of the 1992 Act may be made;
- (a) in writing,
 - (b) by means of an electronic communication in accordance this scheme or
 - (c) where the authority has published a telephone number for the purpose of receiving such applications, by telephone.
- 100.2 Where;
- (a) the authority has made a determination under section 13A(1)(c) in relation to a class of case in which liability is to be reduced; and
 - (b) a person in that class would otherwise be entitled to a reduction under its scheme, that person's application for a reduction under the authority's scheme may also be treated as an application for a reduction under section 13A(1)(c).

⁴¹ Inserted by Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012



Section 101 – 106A⁴²
Electronic Communication

⁴² Inserted by Council Tax Reductions Schemes (Prescribed Requirements) (England) Regulations 2012

101.0 Interpretation

- 101.1 In this Part;
“**information**” includes an application, a certificate, notice or other evidence; and
“**official computer system**” means a computer system maintained by or on behalf of an authority for sending, receiving, processing or storing of any information.

102.0 Conditions for the use of electronic communication

- 102.1 The authority may use an electronic communication in connection with applications for, and awards of, reductions under its scheme.
- 102.2 A person other than the authority may use an electronic communication in connection with the matters referred to in sub-paragraph (1) if the conditions specified in sub-paragraphs (3) to (6) are satisfied.
- 102.3 The first condition is that the person is for the time being permitted to use an electronic communication by an authorisation given by means of a direction of the Chief Executive of the authority.
- 102.4 The second condition is that the person uses an approved method of;
- (a) authenticating the identity of the sender of the communication;
 - (b) electronic communication;
 - (c) authenticating any application or notice delivered by means of an electronic communication; and
 - (d) subject to sub-paragraph (7), submitting to the authority any information.
- 102.5 The third condition is that any information sent by means of an electronic communication is in a form approved for the purposes.
- 102.6 The fourth condition is that the person maintains such records in written or electronic form as may be specified in a direction given by the Chief Executive of the authority.
- 102.7 Where the person uses any method other than the method approved of submitting any information, that information is to be treated as not having been submitted.
- 102.8 In this paragraph “approved” means approved by means of a direction given by the Chief Executive of the authority for the purposes of this section.

103.0 Use of intermediaries

- 103.1 The authority may use intermediaries in connection with;
- (a) the delivery of any information by means of an electronic communication; and
 - (b) the authentication or security of anything transmitted by such means,
- and may require other persons to use intermediaries in connection with those matters.

104.0 Effect of delivering information by means of electronic communication

- 104.1 Any information which is delivered by means of an electronic communication is to be treated as having been delivered in the manner or form required by any provision of an authority’s scheme on the day the conditions imposed;
- (a) by this section; and
 - (b) by or under an enactment,



are satisfied.

104.2 The authority may determine that any information is to be treated as delivered on a different day (whether earlier or later) from the day provided for in sub-paragraph (1).

104.3 Information may not be taken to have been delivered to an official computer system by means of an electronic communication unless it is accepted by the system to which it is delivered.

105.0 Proof of identity of sender or recipient of information

105.1 If it is necessary to prove, for the purpose of any legal proceedings, the identity of—
(a) the sender of any information delivered by means of an electronic communication to an official computer system; or
(b) the recipient of any such information delivered by means of an electronic communication from an official computer system,
the sender or recipient, as the case may be, is to be presumed to be the person whose name is recorded as such on that official computer system.

106.0 Proof of delivery of information

106.1 If it is necessary to prove, for the purpose of any legal proceedings, that the use of an electronic communication has resulted in the delivery of any information this is presumed to have been the case where;

(a) any such information has been delivered to the relevant authority, if the delivery of that information has been recorded on an official computer system; or

(b) any such information has been delivered by the relevant authority, if the delivery of that information has been recorded on an official computer system.

106.2 If it is necessary to prove, for the purpose of any legal proceedings, that the use of an electronic communication has resulted in the delivery of any such information, this is presumed not to be the case, if that information delivered to the relevant authority has not been recorded on an official computer system.

106.3 If it is necessary to prove, for the purpose of any legal proceedings, when any such information sent by means of an electronic communication has been received, the time and date of receipt is presumed to be that recorded on an official computer system.

106A.0 Proof of content of information

106A.1 If it is necessary to prove, for the purpose of any legal proceedings, the content of any information sent by means of an electronic communication, the content is presumed to be that recorded on an official computer system.



Section 107
Counter Fraud and Compliance



107.0 Counter Fraud and compliance

107.1 In order to protect the finances of the authority and also in the interests of all council taxpayers, the authority will undertake such actions as allowed by law to;

- a. Prevent and detect fraudulent claims and actions in respect of Council tax reduction;
- b. Carry out investigations fairly, professionally and in accordance with the law; and
- c. Ensure that sanctions are applied in appropriate cases

107.2 The authority believes that it is important to minimise the opportunity for fraud and;

- a. will implement rigorous procedures for the verification of claims for council tax reduction;
- b. will employ sufficient Officers to fulfil the authority's commitment to combat fraud;
- c. will actively tackle fraud where it occurs in accordance with this scheme;
- d. will co-operate with the Department for Work and Pensions (DWP), Her Majesty's Revenues and Customs and take part in joint working including prosecutions; and
- e. will in all cases seek to recover all outstanding council tax.

107.3 The authority shall put into place such administrative policies, procedures and processes as are necessary to ensure that the actions outlined within paragraph 107.1 and 107.2 can be carried out successfully. In particular the authority shall undertake actions provided by the Council Tax Reduction Schemes (Detection of Fraud and Enforcement) (England) Regulations 2013.



Schedule 1
Applicable Amounts⁴³

⁴³ ⁴³ The amounts shown within this schedule shall be updated in line with the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 as amended



Personal Allowance

1 The amounts specified in column (2) below in respect of each person or couple specified in column (1) shall be the amounts specified for the purposes the main scheme;

Column 1 Person or Couple	Column 2
1. A Single applicant who; a) is entitled to main phase employment and support allowance	£73.10
b) is aged not less than 25	£73.10
c) is aged not less than 18 but less than 25	£57.90
2. Lone Parent	£73.10
3. Couple; a) Where the applicant is entitled to the main phase of employment and support allowance	£114.85
b) Where one member is aged not less than 18	£114.85
c) Polygamous Addition	£41.75

For the purposes of paragraph 1 an applicant is entitled to main phase employment and support allowance if;

- a. Paragraph 17 or 18 is satisfied in relation to the applicant; or
- b. The applicant is entitled to a converted employment and support allowance

2 (1) The amount specified in column (2) below in respect of each person specified in column (1) shall, for the relevant period specified in column (1), be the amounts specified for the purposes of the main scheme

Column 1 Child or Young Person	Column 2
Person in respect of the period– (a) beginning on that person’s date of birth and ending on the day preceding the first Monday in September following that person’s sixteenth birthday;	£66.90
(b) beginning on the first Monday in September following that person’s sixteenth birthday and ending on the day preceding that person’s twentieth birthday.	£66.90

(2) In column (1) of the table in paragraph (1), “the first Monday in September” means the Monday which first occurs in the month of September in any year.

Family Premiums

- 3. (1) The amount for the purposes of this scheme in respect of a family of which at least one member is a child or young person shall be
 - a. where the applicant is a lone parent to whom sub-paragraph (3) of Schedule 3 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 applies, £22.20;
 - b. in any other case, £17.45;



Premiums

4. Except as provided in paragraph 5, the premiums specified in this Schedule shall, for the purposes of this scheme, be applicable to an applicant who satisfies the condition specified in paragraphs 4 to 16 in respect of that premium.
5. Subject to paragraph 6, where an applicant satisfies the conditions in respect of more than one premium in this Schedule, only one premium shall be applicable to him and, if they are different amounts, the higher or highest amount shall apply.
6. (1) The following premiums, namely—
 - a. severe disability premium to which paragraph 10 applies;
 - b. an enhanced disability premium to which paragraph 11 applies;
 - c. a disabled child premium to which paragraph 12 applies; and
 - d. carer premium to which paragraph 13 applies,may be applicable in addition to any other premium which may apply under this Schedule
7. (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), for the purposes of this Schedule, once a premium is applicable to an applicant under this Part, a person shall be treated as being in receipt of any benefit for
 - a. in the case of a benefit to which the Social Security (Overlapping Benefits) Regulations 1979 applies, any period during which, apart from the provisions of those Regulations, he would be in receipt of that benefit; and
 - b. any period spent by a person in undertaking a course of training or instruction provided or approved by the Secretary of State under section 2 of the 1973 Act or by Skills Development Scotland, Scottish Enterprise or Highlands and Islands Enterprise under or section 2 of the Enterprise and New Towns(Scotland) Act 1990 for any period during which he is in receipt of a training allowance.(2) For the purposes of the carer premium, a person shall be treated as being in receipt of carer's allowance by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)(a) only if and for so long as the person in respect of whose care the allowance has been claimed remains in receipt of attendance allowance, or the care component of disability living allowance at the highest or middle rate prescribed in accordance with section 72(3) of the Act or the daily living component of the personal independence payment under the Welfare Reform Act 2012 or an AFIP.

Disability Premium

8. The condition (s) to be met is contained in Schedule 3 (12) Housing Benefit Regulations 2006

Additional Condition for the Disability Premiums

9. The condition (s) to be met is contained in Schedule 3 (13) Housing Benefit Regulations 2006

Severe Disability Premiums

10. The condition (s) to be met is contained in Schedule 3 (14) Housing Benefit Regulations 2006

Enhanced Disability Premium

11. The condition (s) to be met is contained in Schedule 3 (15) Housing Benefit Regulations 2006

Disabled Child Premium

12. The condition (s) to be met is contained in Schedule 3 (16) Housing Benefit Regulations 2006

Carer Premium

13. The condition (s) to be met is contained in Schedule 3 (17) Housing Benefit Regulations 2006

Persons in receipt of concessionary payments

14. For the purpose of determining whether a premium is applicable to a person under paragraphs 8 to 13, any concessionary payment made to compensate that person for the non-payment of any benefit mentioned in those paragraphs shall be treated as if it were a payment of that benefit.



Persons in receipt of benefit for another

15. For the purposes of this Schedule, a person shall be regarded as being in receipt of any benefit if, and only if, it is paid in respect of him and shall be so regarded only for any period in respect of which that benefit is paid.

Amounts of Premium

16. For the purposes of this Schedule, the following amounts shall apply;

Premium	Amount
Disability Premium	£34.35
a. where the applicant satisfies the condition in paragraph 12(a) of Schedule 3 Housing Benefit Regulations 2006	
b. where the applicant satisfies the condition in paragraph 12(b) of Schedule 3 Housing Benefit Regulations 2006	£48.95
Severe Disability Premium	£65.85
a. where the applicant satisfies the condition in paragraph 14(2)(a) of Schedule 3 Housing Benefit Regulations 2006	
b. where the applicant satisfies the condition in paragraph 14(2)(b) of Schedule 3 Housing Benefit Regulations 2006	£65.85
i. in a case where there is someone in receipt of carer's allowance or if he or any partner satisfies that condition only by virtue of paragraph 14(5);	
ii. in a case where there is no one in receipt of such an allowance	£131.70
Disabled Child Premium	£64.19 in respect of each child or young person in respect of whom the condition specified in paragraph 16 of Part 3 of Schedule 3 Housing Benefit Regulations 2006
Carer Premium	£36.85 in respect of each person who satisfies the condition specified in paragraph 17 of Part 3 of Schedule 3 Housing Benefit Regulations 2006
Enhanced Disability Premium	(a) £26.04 in respect of each child or young person in respect of whom the conditions specified in paragraph 15 of Part 3 of Schedule 3 Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 are satisfied; (b) £16.80 in respect of each person who is neither— (i) a child or young person; nor (ii) a member of a couple or a polygamous marriage, in respect of whom the conditions specified in paragraph 15 are satisfied; (c) £24.10 where the applicant is a member of a couple or a

	polygamous marriage and the conditions specified in paragraph 15 of Part 3 of Schedule 3 Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 are satisfied in respect of a member of that couple or polygamous marriage.
--	---

The components

- 17. The condition (s) to be met is contained in Schedule 3 (21 -24) Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 as amended by the Social Security (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2013
- 18. The amount of the work-related activity component is £29.05. No work-related activity component will be awarded where the applicant or partner makes a new claim for Employment and Support Allowance on or after 1st April 2017. The amount of the support component is £38.55.

Transitional Addition

- 19. The applicant is entitled to the transitional addition calculated in accordance with paragraph 30 of Schedule 3 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 where the applicant or the applicant’s partner meets the conditions contained within paragraphs 27 – 29 of Schedule 3 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006

Amount of transitional addition

- 20. The amount of any transitional addition is calculated in accordance with paragraphs 30 and 31 of Schedule 3 of the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006



Schedule 2
Second Adult Reduction
(Alternative Maximum Council tax reduction)



1. Subject to paragraphs 2 and 3, the alternative maximum Council Tax Reduction in respect of a day for the purpose of section 62 shall be determined in accordance with the following Table and in this Table
 - a) 'second adult' means any person or persons residing with the applicant; and
 - b) 'persons to whom paragraph 45.2 applies' includes any person to whom that section would apply were they, and their partner if they had one, below the qualifying age for state pension credit.
2. In this Schedule 'council tax due in respect of that day' means the council tax payable under section 10 or 78 of the 1992 Act less–
 - (a) any reductions made in consequence of any enactment in, or under, the 1992 Act; and
 - (b) in a case to which sub-paragraph (c) in column (1) of the table below applies, the amount of any discount which may be appropriate to the dwelling under the 1992 Act.

Second Adult	Alternative Maximum Council Tax Reduction
(a) Where the second adult or all second adults are in receipt of income support, an income-related employment and support allowance or state pension credit or are persons on an income-based jobseeker's allowance;	25 per cent of the council tax due in respect of that day;
(b) where the gross income of the second adult or, where there is more than one second adult, their aggregate gross income disregarding any income of persons on income support, an income-related employment and support allowance, state pension credit or an income-based jobseeker's allowance–	is less than £206.00 per week; - 15 per cent of the council tax due in respect of that day; is not less than £206.00 per week but less than £266.00 per week; - 7.5 per cent of the council tax due in respect of that day;
(c) where the dwelling would be wholly occupied by one or more persons to whom regulation 43.1 applies but for the presence of one or more second adults who are in receipt of income support, state pension credit, an income-related employment and support allowance or are persons on an income-based jobseeker's allowance	100 per cent. of the council tax due in respect of that day.

In determining a second adult's gross income for the purposes of this Schedule, there shall be disregarded from that income;

- a. any attendance allowance, or any disability living allowance under section 71 of the Act or any personal independence payment under the Welfare Reform Act 2012 or an AFIP;
- b. any payment made under or by the Trusts, the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the Independent Living Fund (2006) which had his income fallen to be calculated under section 30 (calculation of income



other than earnings) would have been disregarded under paragraph 24 of Schedule 4 (income in kind); and

- c. any payment which had his income fallen to be calculated under section 30 would have been disregarded under paragraph 36 of Schedule 4 (payments made under certain trusts and certain other payments).

- 3. Where there are two or more second adults residing with the applicant for reduction and any such second adult falls to be disregarded for the purposes of discount in accordance with Schedule 1 of the 1992 Act, his income shall be disregarded in determining the amount of any alternative maximum Council Tax Reduction, unless that second adult is a member of a couple and his partner does not fall to be disregarded for the purposes of discount.

Schedule 3

Sums to be disregarded in the calculation of earnings⁴⁴

⁴⁴ All amounts within this schedule will be amended in line with the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 (as amended)



1. In the case of an applicant who has been engaged in remunerative work as an employed earner or, had the employment been in Great Britain, would have been so engaged—
 - (a) where—
 - (i) the employment has been terminated because of retirement; and
 - (ii) on retirement he is entitled to a retirement pension under the Act, or is not so entitled solely because of his failure to satisfy the contribution conditions,
any earnings paid or due to be paid in respect of that employment, but only for a period commencing on the day immediately after the date on which the employment was terminated;
 - (b) where before the first day of entitlement to council tax reduction the employment has been terminated otherwise than because of retirement, any earnings paid or due to be paid in respect of that employment except—
 - (i) any payment of the nature described in
 - (aa) paragraph 25.1(e), or
 - (bb) section 28, 64 or 68 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (guarantee payments, suspension from work on medical or maternity grounds); and
 - (ii) any award, sum or payment of the nature described in
 - (aa) paragraph 25.1(g) or (h), or
 - (bb) section 34 or 70 of the Employment Rights Act 1996 (guarantee payments and suspension from work: complaints to employment tribunals),
including any payment made following the settlement of a complaint to an employment tribunal or of court proceedings;
 - (c) where before the first day of entitlement to council tax reduction—
 - (i) the employment has not been terminated, but
 - (ii) the applicant is not engaged in remunerative work,

any earnings paid or due to be paid in respect of that employment except any payment or remuneration of the nature described in paragraph 1(b)(i) or (ii)(bb) or paragraph 25.1(i), or (j).
2. In the case of an applicant who, before first day of entitlement to council tax reduction;
 - (a) has been engaged in part-time employment as an employed earner or, where the employment has been outside Great Britain, would have been so engaged had the employment been in Great Britain; and
 - (b) has ceased to be engaged in that employment, whether or not that employment has been terminated,
any earnings paid or due to be paid in respect of that employment except;
 - (i) where that employment has been terminated, any payment of the nature described in paragraph 1(b)(i) or (ii)(bb);
 - (ii) where that employment has not been terminated, any payment or remuneration of the nature described in paragraph 1(b)(i) or (ii)(bb) or paragraph 25.1(i), (i) or (j).
- 2A. In the case of an applicant who has been engaged in remunerative work or part-time employment as a self-employed earner or, had the employment been in Great Britain would have been so engaged and who has ceased to be so employed, from the date of the cessation

of his employment any earnings derived from that employment except earnings to which paragraph 27.3 and paragraph 27.4 (earnings of self-employed earners) apply.

3. (1) In a case to which this paragraph applies and paragraph 4 does not apply, £30; but notwithstanding section 15 (calculation of income and capital of members of an applicant's family and of a polygamous marriage) if this paragraph applies to an applicant it shall not apply to his partner except where, and to the extent that, the earnings of the applicant which are to be disregarded under this paragraph are less than £30.
- (2) This paragraph applies where the applicant's applicable amount includes an amount by way of the disability premium, severe disability premium, work-related activity component or support component.
- (3) This paragraph applies where
 - (a) he is a member of a couple and his applicable amount includes an amount by way of the disability premium; and
 - (b) he or his partner has not attained the qualifying age for state pension credit and at least one is engaged in employment.
- (4)–(5) Not used
4. In a case where the applicant is a lone parent, £37.50.
5. (1) In a case to which neither paragraph 3 nor paragraph 4 applies to the applicant and, subject to sub-paragraph (2), where the applicant's applicable amount includes an amount by way of the carer premium, £30 of the earnings of the person who is, or at any time in the preceding eight weeks was, in receipt of carer's allowance or treated in accordance with this scheme as being in receipt of carer's allowance.
- (2) Where the carer premium is awarded in respect of the applicant and of any partner of his, their earnings shall for the purposes of this paragraph be aggregated, but the amount to be disregarded in accordance with sub-paragraph (1) shall not exceed £30 of the aggregated amount.
6. Where the carer premium is awarded in respect of an applicant who is a member of a couple and whose earnings are less than £30, but is not awarded in respect of the other member of the couple, and that other member is engaged in an employment;
 - (a) specified in paragraph 8(1), so much of the other member's earnings as would not when aggregated with the amount disregarded under paragraph 5 exceed £30;
 - (b) other than one specified in paragraph 8(1), so much of the other member's earnings from such other employment up to £15 as would not when aggregated with the amount disregarded under paragraph 5 exceed £30.
7. In a case where paragraphs 3, 5, 6 and 8 do not apply to the applicant and he is one of a couple and a member of that couple is in employment, £15; but, notwithstanding section 15 (calculation of income and capital of members of applicant's family and of a polygamous marriage), if this paragraph applies to an applicant it shall not apply to his partner except where, and to the extent that, the earnings of the applicant which are to be disregarded under this paragraph are less than £15.
8. (1) In a case where paragraphs 3, 4, 5 and 6 do not apply to the applicant, £30 of earnings derived from one or more employments as–
 - (a) as a part-time fire-fighter employed by a fire and rescue authority constituted by a scheme under section 2 of the Fire and Rescue Services Act 2004 or a scheme to which section 4 of that Act applies;
 - (b) a part-time fire-fighter employed by a fire and rescue authority (as defined in section

1 of the Fire (Scotland) Act 2005(a)) or a joint fire and rescue board constituted by an amalgamation scheme made under section 2(1) of that Act;

- (c) an auxiliary coastguard in respect of coast rescue activities;
- (d) a person engaged part-time in the manning or launching of a life boat;
- (e) a member of any territorial or reserve force prescribed in Part I of Schedule 6 to the Social Security (Contributions) Regulations 2001;

but, notwithstanding section 15 (calculation of income and capital of members of applicant's family and of a polygamous marriage), if this paragraph applies to an applicant it shall not apply to his partner except to the extent specified in sub-paragraph (2).

- (2) If the applicant's partner is engaged in employment;
 - (a) specified in sub-paragraph (1), so much of his earnings as would not in aggregate with the amount of the applicant's earnings disregarded under this paragraph exceed £30;
 - (b) other than one specified in sub-paragraph (1), so much of his earnings from that employment up to £15 as would not in aggregate with the applicant's earnings disregarded under this paragraph exceed £30.

9. Where the applicant is engaged in one or more employments specified in paragraph 8(1), but his earnings derived from such employments are less than £30 in any week and he is also engaged in any other employment so much of his earnings from that other employment, up to £7.50 if he is a single applicant, or up to £15 if he has a partner, as would not in aggregate with the amount of his earnings disregarded under paragraph 8 exceed £30.

10. In a case to which none of the paragraphs 3 to 9 applies, £7.50.

10A. (1) Where;

- (a) the applicant (or if the applicant is a member of a couple, at least one member of that couple) is a person to whom sub-paragraph (5) applies;
- (b) the Secretary of State is satisfied that that person is undertaking exempt work as defined in sub-paragraph (6); and
- (c) paragraph 12 does not apply,

the amount specified in sub-paragraph (7) ('the specified amount').

(2) Where this paragraph applies, paragraphs 3 to 10 do not apply; but in any case where the applicant is a lone parent, and the specified amount would be less than the amount specified in paragraph 4, then paragraph 4 applies instead of this paragraph.

(3) Notwithstanding section 15 (calculation of income and capital of members of applicant's family and of a polygamous marriage), if sub-paragraph (1) applies to one member of a couple ('A') it shall not apply to the other member of that couple ('B') except to the extent provided in sub-paragraph (4).

(4) Where A's earnings are less than the specified amount, there shall also be disregarded so much of B's earnings as would not when aggregated with A's earnings exceed the specified amount; but the amount of B's earnings which may be disregarded under this sub-paragraph is limited to a maximum of £30 unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that B is also undertaking exempt work.

(5) This sub-paragraph applies to a person who is;

- (a) in receipt of a contributory employment and support allowance;
- (b) in receipt of incapacity benefit;
- (c) in receipt of severe disablement allowance; or
- (d) being credited with earnings on the grounds of incapacity for work or limited capability for work under regulation 8B of the Social Security (Credits) Regulations 1975

(6) 'Exempt work' means work of the kind described in;

(a) regulation 45(2), (3) or (4) of the Employment and Support Allowance Regulations; or (as the case may be)
 (b) regulation 17(2), (3) or (4) of the Social Security (Incapacity for Work) (General) Regulations 1995,
 and, in determining for the purposes of this paragraph whether an applicant or a member of a couple is undertaking any type of exempt work, it is immaterial whether that person or their partner is also undertaking other work.

(7) The specified amount is the amount of money from time to time mentioned in any provision referred to in sub-paragraph (6) by virtue of which the work referred to in sub-paragraph (1) is exempt (or, where more than one such provision is relevant and those provisions mention different amounts of money, the highest of those amounts).

11. Any amount or the balance of any amount which would fall to be disregarded under paragraph 19 or 20 of Schedule 4 had the applicant's income which does not consist of earnings been sufficient to entitle him to the full disregard thereunder.

12. Where an applicant is on income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance, his earnings.

13. Any earnings derived from employment, which are payable in a country outside the United Kingdom for such period during which there is a prohibition against the transfer to the United Kingdom of those earnings.

14. Where a payment of earnings is made in a currency other than Sterling, any banking charge or commission payable in converting that payment into Sterling.

15. Any earnings of a child or young person.

16. (1) In a case where the applicant is a person who satisfies at least one of the conditions set out in sub-paragraph (2), and his net earnings equal or exceed the total of the amounts set out in sub-paragraph (3), the amount of his earnings that falls to be disregarded under paragraphs 3 to 10A of this Schedule shall be increased by £17.10.

(2) The conditions of this sub-paragraph are that—

(a) the applicant, or if he is a member of a couple, either the applicant or his partner, is a person to whom regulation 20(1)(c) of the Working Tax Credit Regulations applies; or

(b) the applicant—

(i) is, or if he is a member of a couple, at least one member of that couple is aged at least 25 and is engaged in remunerative work for on average not less than 30 hours per week; or

(ii) is a member of a couple and

(aa) at least one member of that couple, is engaged in remunerative work for on average not less than 16 hours per week; and

(bb) his applicable amount includes a family premium; or

(iii) is a lone parent who is engaged in remunerative work for on average not less than 16 hours per week; or

(iv) is, or if he is a member of a couple, at least one member of that couple is engaged in remunerative work for on average not less than 16 hours per week; and;

(aa) the applicant's applicable amount includes a disability premium, the work-related activity component or the support component ;

(bb) where he is a member of a couple, at least one member of that couple satisfies the qualifying conditions for the disability premium or either of the components referred to in sub-head (aa) above and is engaged in remunerative work for on average not less than 16 hours per week.

(3) The following are the amounts referred to in sub-paragraph (1);



- (a) the amount calculated as disregardable from the applicant's earnings under paragraphs 3 to 10A of this Schedule;
 - (b) the amount of child care charges calculated as deductible under paragraph 17(1)(c); and
 - (c) £17.10
- (4) The provisions of section 6 shall apply in determining whether or not a person works for on average not less than 30 hours per week, but as if the reference to 16 hours in paragraph (1) of that section were a reference to 30 hours.
- 17.** In this Schedule 'part-time employment' means employment in which the person is engaged on average for less than 16 hours a week.



Schedule 4

Sums to be disregarded in the calculation of income other than earnings⁴⁵

⁴⁵ Any amounts shown in this schedule will be updated in line with the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 as amended



1. Any amount paid by way of tax on income, which is to be taken into account under section 30 (calculation of income other than earnings).
- A2. Any payment made to the claim and in respect of any travel or other expenses incurred, or to be incurred, by him in respect of his participation in the Mandatory Work Activity Scheme.
- A3. Any payment made to the applicant in respect of any travel or other expenses incurred, or to be incurred, by him in respect of his participation in the Employment, Skills and Enterprise Scheme or Back to Work Scheme, but only for 52 weeks beginning with the date of receipt of the payment.
2. Any payment in respect of any expenses incurred or to be incurred by an applicant who is—
 - (a) engaged by a charitable or voluntary organisation, or
 - (b) volunteer,if he otherwise derives no remuneration or profit from the employment and is not to be treated as possessing any earnings under section 32.0 (notional income).
- 2A. Any payment in respect of expenses arising out of the applicant's participation as a service user.
3. In the case of employment as an employed earner, any payment in respect of expenses wholly, exclusively and necessarily incurred in the performance of the duties of the employment.
4. Where an applicant is on income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance the whole of his income.
5. Where the applicant is a member of a joint-claim couple for the purposes of the Jobseekers Act and his partner is on an income-based jobseeker's allowance, the whole of the applicant's income.
6. Where the applicant, or the person who was the partner of the applicant on 31st March 2003, was entitled on that date to income support or an income-based jobseeker's allowance but ceased to be so entitled on or before 5th April 2003 by virtue only of regulation 13 of the Housing Benefit (General) Amendment (No. 3) Regulations 1999 as in force at that date, the whole of his income.
7. Any disability living allowance or personal independence payment or AFIP
8. Any concessionary payment made to compensate for the non-payment of;
 - (a) any payment specified in paragraph 7 or 10;
 - (b) income support;
 - (c) an income-based jobseeker's allowance.
 - (d) an income-related employment and support allowance.
9. Any mobility supplement under article 20 of the Naval, Military and Air Forces Etc. (Disablement and Death) Service Pensions Order 2006 (including such a supplement by virtue of any other scheme or order) or under article 25A of the Personal Injuries (Civilians) Scheme 1983 or any payment intended to compensate for the non-payment of such a supplement.
10. Any attendance allowance.
11. Any payment to the applicant as holder of the Victoria Cross or of the George Cross or any analogous payment.
12. (1) Any payment—
 - (a) by way of an education maintenance allowance made pursuant to;
 - (i) regulations made under section 518 of the Education Act 1996 (payment of

- school expenses; grant of scholarships etc);
- (ii) regulations made under section 49 or 73(f) of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980 (power to assist persons to take advantage of educational facilities);
- (iii) directions made under section 73ZA of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980 and paid under section 12(2)(c) of the Further and Higher Education (Scotland) Act 1992
- (b) corresponding to such an education maintenance allowance, made pursuant to;
- (i) section 14 or section 181 of the Education Act 2002 (power of Secretary of State and National Assembly for Wales to give financial assistance for purposes related to education or childcare, and allowances in respect of education or training); or
- (ii) regulations made under section 181 of that Act; or
- (iii) in England, by way of financial assistance made pursuant to section 14 of the Education Act 2002.
- (2) Any payment, other than a payment to which sub-paragraph (1) applies, made pursuant to;
- (a) regulations made under section 518 of the Education Act 1996;
- (b) regulations made under section 49 of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980; or
- (c) directions made under section 73ZA of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980 and paid under section 12(2)(c) of the Further and Higher Education (Scotland) Act 1992, in respect of a course of study attended by a child or a young person or a person who is in receipt of an education maintenance allowance or other payment made pursuant to any provision specified in sub-paragraph (1).
- 13.** Any payment made to the applicant by way of a repayment under regulation 11(2) of the Education (Teacher Student Loans) (Repayment etc.) Regulations 2002.
- 14**
- (1) Any payment made pursuant to section 2 of the 1973 Act or section 2 of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990 except a payment;
- (a) made as a substitute for income support, a jobseeker's allowance, incapacity benefit, severe disablement allowance or an employment and support allowance;
- (b) of an allowance referred to in section 2(3) of the 1973 Act or section 2(5) of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990; or
- (c) intended to meet the cost of living expenses which relate to any one or more of the items specified in sub-paragraph (2) whilst an applicant is participating in an education, training or other scheme to help him enhance his employment prospects unless the payment is a Career Development Loan paid pursuant to section 2 of the 1973 Act and the period of education or training or the scheme, which is supported by that loan, has been completed.
- (2) The items specified in this sub-paragraph for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(c) are food, ordinary clothing or footwear, household fuel or rent of the applicant or, where the applicant is a member of a family, any other member of his family, or any council tax or water charges for which that applicant or member is liable.
- 15**
- (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), any of the following payments;
- (a) a charitable payment;
- (b) a voluntary payment;
- (c) a payment (not falling within sub-paragraph (a) or (b) above) from a trust whose funds are derived from a payment made in consequence of any personal injury to the applicant;
- (d) a payment under an annuity purchased;
- (i) pursuant to any agreement or court order to make payments to the applicant; or
- (ii) from funds derived from a payment made, in consequence of any personal injury to the applicant; or
- (e) a payment (not falling within sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) received by virtue of any

agreement or court order to make payments to the applicant in consequence of any personal injury to the applicant.

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) shall not apply to a payment, which is made or due to be made by–
 - (a) a former partner of the applicant, or a former partner of any member of the applicant’s family; or
 - (b) the parent of a child or young person where that child or young person is a member of the applicant’s family.
- 16.** 100% of any of the following, namely
- (a) a war disablement pension (except insofar as such a pension falls to be disregarded under paragraph 9 or 10);
 - (b) a war widow’s pension or war widower’s pension;
 - (c) a pension payable to a person as a widow, widower or surviving civil partner under any power of Her Majesty otherwise than under an enactment to make provision about pensions for or in respect of persons who have been disabled or have died in consequence of service as members of the armed forces of the Crown;
 - (d) a guaranteed income payment;
 - (e) a payment made to compensate for the non-payment of such a pension or payment as is mentioned in any of the preceding sub-paragraphs;
 - (f) a pension paid by the government of a country outside Great Britain which is analogous to any of the pensions or payments mentioned in sub-paragraphs (a) to (d) above;
 - (g) pension paid to victims of National Socialist persecution under any special provision made by the law of the Federal Republic of Germany, or any part of it, or of the Republic of Austria.
- 17.** Subject to paragraph 35, £15 of any;
- (a) widowed mother’s allowance paid pursuant to section 37 of the Act;
 - (b) widowed parent’s allowance paid pursuant to section 39A of the Act.
- 18.** (1) Any income derived from capital to which the applicant is or is treated under section 41 (capital jointly held) as beneficially entitled but, subject to sub- paragraph (2), not income derived from capital disregarded under paragraphs 1, 2, 4, 8, 14 or 25 to 28 of Schedule 5.
- (2) Income derived from capital disregarded under paragraphs 2, 4 or 25 to 28 of Schedule 5 but only to the extent of–
- (a) any mortgage repayments made in respect of the dwelling or premises in the period during which that income accrued; or
 - (b) any council tax or water charges which the applicant is liable to pay in respect of the dwelling or premises and which are paid in the period during which that income accrued.
- (3) The definition of ‘water charges’ in paragraph 2(1) shall apply to sub-paragraph (2) of this paragraph with the omission of the words ‘in so far as such charges are in respect of the dwelling which a person occupies as his home’.
- 19.** Where the applicant makes a parental contribution in respect of a student attending a course at an establishment in the United Kingdom or undergoing education in the United Kingdom, which contribution has been assessed for the purposes of calculating–
- (a) under, or pursuant to regulations made under powers conferred by, sections 1 or 2 of the Education Act 1962 or section 22 of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998, that student’s award;
 - (b) under regulations made in exercise of the powers conferred by section 49 of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980, that student’s bursary, scholarship, or other allowance under that section or under regulations made in exercise of the powers conferred by section 73 of that Act of 1980, any payment to that student under that section; or
 - (c) the student’s student loan,
- an amount equal to the weekly amount of that parental contribution, but only in respect of the period for which that contribution is assessed as being payable.

- 20.** (1) Where the applicant is the parent of a student aged under 25 in advanced education who either;
- (a) is not in receipt of any award, grant or student loan in respect of that education; or
 - (b) is in receipt of an award under section 2 of the Education Act 1962 (discretionary awards) or an award bestowed by virtue of the Teaching and Higher Education Act 1998, or regulations made thereunder, or a bursary, scholarship or other allowance under section 49(1) of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980, or a payment under section 73 of that Act of 1980,
- and the applicant makes payments by way of a contribution towards the student's maintenance, other than a parental contribution falling within paragraph 19, an amount specified in sub-paragraph (2) in respect of each week during the student's term.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), the amount shall be equal to–
- (a) the weekly amount of the payments; or
 - (b) the amount by way of a personal allowance for a single applicant under 25 less the weekly amount of any award, bursary, scholarship, allowance or payment referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(b),
- whichever is less.
- 21.** Any payment made to the applicant by a child or young person or a non- dependant.
- 22.** Where the applicant occupies a dwelling as his home and the dwelling is also occupied by a person other than one to whom paragraph 21 or 23 refers and there is a contractual liability to make payments to the applicant in respect of the occupation of the dwelling by that person or a member of his family–
- (a) where the aggregate of any payments made in respect of any one week in respect of the occupation of the dwelling by that person or a member of his family, or by that person and a member of his family, is less than £20, the whole of that amount; or
 - (b) where the aggregate of any such payments is £20 or more per week, £20.
- 23.** (1) Where the applicant occupies a dwelling as his home and he provides in that dwelling board and lodging accommodation, an amount, in respect of each person for which such accommodation is provided for the whole or any part of a week, equal to–
- (a) where the aggregate of any payments made in respect of any one week in respect of such accommodation provided to such person does not exceed £20.00, 100 per cent. of such payments;
 - (b) where the aggregate of any such payments exceeds £20.00, £20.00 and 50 per cent. of the excess over £20.00.
- (2) In this paragraph, 'board and lodging accommodation' means accommodation provided to a person or, if he is a member of a family, to him or any other member of his family, for a charge which is inclusive of the provision of that accommodation and at least some cooked or prepared meals which both are cooked or prepared (by a person other than the person to whom the accommodation is provided or a member of his family) and are consumed in that accommodation or associated premises.
- 24.** (1) Any income in kind, except where regulation 30(11)(b) (provision of support under section 95 or 98 of the Immigration and Asylum Act in the calculation of income other than earnings) applies.
- (2) The reference in sub-paragraph (1) to 'income in kind' does not include a payment to a third party made in respect of the applicant which is used by the third party to provide benefits in kind to the applicant.
- 25.** Any income which is payable in a country outside the United Kingdom for such period during which there is a prohibition against the transfer to the United Kingdom of that income.

- 26.** (1) Any payment made to the applicant in respect of a person who is a member of his family—
- (a) pursuant to regulations under section 2(6)(b), 3 or 4 of the Adoption and Children Act 2002 or in accordance or with a scheme approved by the Scottish Ministers under section 51A of the Adoption (Scotland) Act 1978(b) (schemes for payments of allowances to adopters); or in accordance with an Adoption Allowance Scheme made under section 71 of the Adoption and Children (Scotland) Act 2007 (Adoption Allowances Schemes)
 - (b) not used
 - (ba) which is a payment made by a local authority in pursuance of section 15(1) of, and paragraph 15 of Schedule 1 to, the Children Act 1989 (local authority contribution to a child’s maintenance where the child is living with a person as a result of a residence order) or in Scotland section 50 of the Children Act 1975 (payments towards maintenance of children);
 - (c) which is a payment made by an authority, as defined in Article 2 of the Children Order, in pursuance of Article 15 of, and paragraph 17 of Schedule 1 to, that Order (contribution by an authority to child’s maintenance);
 - (d) in accordance with regulations made pursuant to section 14F of the Children Act 1989(c) (special guardianship support services);
- (2) Any payment, other than a payment to which sub-paragraph (1)(a) applies, made to the applicant pursuant to regulations under section 2(6)(b), 3 or 4 of the Adoption and Children Act 2002.
- 27.** Any payment made to the applicant with whom a person is accommodated by virtue of arrangements made
- (a) by a local authority under—
 - (i) section 23(2)(a) of the Children Act 1989 (provision of accommodation and maintenance for a child whom they are looking after),
 - (ii) section 26 of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995 (manner of provision of accommodation to child looked after by local authority), or
 - (iii) regulations 33 or 51 of the Looked After Children (Scotland) Regulations 2009 (fostering and kinship care allowances and fostering allowances); or
 - (b) by a voluntary organisation under section 59(1)(a) of the Children Act 1989 (provision of accommodation by voluntary organisations).
- 28.** Any payment made to the applicant or his partner for a person (‘the person concerned’), who is not normally a member of the applicant’s household but is temporarily in his care, by—
- (a) a health authority;
 - (b) a local authority but excluding payments of housing benefit made in respect of the person concerned;
 - (c) a voluntary organisation;
 - (d) the person concerned pursuant to section 26(3A) of the National Assistance Act 1948;
 - (e) a primary care trust established under section 16A of the National Health Service Act 1977 or established by an order made under section 18(2)(c) of the National Health Service Act 2006; or
 - (f) a Local Health Board established under section 16BA of the National Health Service Act 1977 or established by an order made under section 11 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006
- 29.** Any payment made by a local authority in accordance with section 17, 23B, 23C or 24A of the Children Act 1989 or, as the case may be, section 12 of the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968 or section 22, 29 or 30 of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995 (provision of services for children and their families and advice and assistance to certain children).
- 29A.** (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), any payment (or part of a payment) made by a local authority in accordance with section 23C of the Children Act 1989(e) or section 29 of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995(local authorities’ duty to promote welfare of children and powers to grant financial assistance to persons in, or formerly in, their care) to a person (‘A’) which A passes on

to the applicant.

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) applies only where A;
- (a) was formerly in the applicant's care, and
 - (b) is aged 18 or over, and
 - (c) continues to live with the applicant.

- 30.** (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), any payment received under an insurance policy taken out to insure against the risk of being unable to maintain repayments;
- (a) on a loan which is secured on the dwelling which the applicant occupies as his home; or
 - (b) under a regulated agreement as defined for the purposes of the Consumer Credit Act 1974 or under a hire-purchase agreement or a conditional sale agreement as defined for the purposes of Part 3 of the Hire-Purchase Act 1964.
- (2) A payment referred to in sub-paragraph (1) shall only be disregarded to the extent that the payment received under that policy does not exceed the amounts, calculated on a weekly basis, which are used to—
- (a) maintain the repayments referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(a) or, as the case may be, (b); and
 - (b) meet any amount due by way of premiums on—
 - (i) that policy; or
 - (ii) in a case to which sub-paragraph(1)(a) applies, an insurance policy taken out to insure against loss or damage to any building or part of a building which is occupied by the applicant as his home and which is required as a condition of the loan referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(a).
- 31.** Any payment of income which, by virtue of section 36 (income treated as capital) is to be treated as capital.
- 32.** Any social fund payment made pursuant to Part 8 of the Act (the Social Fund) or any local welfare provision as defined by the Social Security (Miscellaneous Amendments) Regulations 2013
- 33.** Any payment under Part 10 of the Act (Christmas bonus for pensioners).
- 34.** Where a payment of income is made in a currency other than sterling, any banking charge or commission payable in converting that payment into sterling.
- 35.** The total of an applicant's income or, if he is a member of a family, the family's income and the income of any person which he is treated as possessing under paragraph 15.2 (calculation of income and capital of members of applicant's family and of a polygamous marriage) to be disregarded under paragraph 47.2(b) and paragraph 48.1(d) (calculation of covenant income where a contribution assessed, covenant income where no grant income or no contribution is assessed), paragraph 51(2) (treatment of student loans), paragraph 52(3) (treatment of payments from access funds) and paragraphs 16 and 17 shall in no case exceed £20 per week.
- 36.** (1) Any payment made under or by any of the Trusts, the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the Independent Living Fund (2006).
- (2) Any payment by or on behalf of a person who is suffering or who suffered from haemophilia or who is or was a qualifying person, which derives from a payment made under or by any of the Trusts to which sub-paragraph (1) refers and which is made to or for the benefit of—
- (a) that person's partner or former partner from whom he is not, or where that person has died was not, estranged or divorced or with whom he has formed a civil partnership that has not been dissolved or, where that person has died, had not been dissolved at the time of that person's death;
 - (b) any child who is a member of that person's family or who was such a member and who is a member of the applicant's family; or
 - (c) any young person who is a member of that person's family or who was such a

member and who is a member of the applicant's family.

(3) Any payment by or on behalf of the partner or former partner of a person who is suffering or who suffered from haemophilia or who is or was a qualifying person provided that the partner or former partner and that person are not, or if either of them has died were not, estranged or divorced or, where the partner or former partner and that person have formed a civil partnership, the civil partnership has not been dissolved or, if either of them has died, had not been dissolved at the time of the death, which derives from a payment made under or by any of the Trusts to which sub-paragraph (1) refers and which is made to or for the benefit of;

- (a) the person who is suffering from haemophilia or who is a qualifying person;
- (b) any child who is a member of that person's family or who was such a member and who is a member of the applicant's family; or
- (c) any young person who is a member of that person's family or who was such a member and who is a member of the applicant's family.

(4) Any payment by a person who is suffering from haemophilia or who is a qualifying person, which derives from a payment under or by any of the Trusts to which sub-paragraph (1) refers, where;

- (a) that person has no partner or former partner from whom he is not estranged or divorced or with whom he has formed a civil partnership that has not been dissolved, nor any child or young person who is or had been a member of that person's family; and
- (b) the payment is made either;
 - (i) to that person's parent or step-parent, or
 - (ii) where that person at the date of the payment is a child, a young person or a student who has not completed his full-time education and has no parent or step-parent, to his guardian,

but only for a period from the date of the payment until the end of two years from that person's death.

(5) Any payment out of the estate of a person who suffered from haemophilia or who was a qualifying person, which derives from a payment under or by any of the Trusts to which sub-paragraph (1) refers, where;

- (a) that person at the date of his death (the relevant date) had no partner or former partner from whom he was not estranged or divorced or with whom he has formed a civil partnership that has not been dissolved, nor any child or young person who was or had been a member of his family; and
- (b) the payment is made either
 - (i) to that person's parent or step-parent, or
 - (ii) where that person at the relevant date was a child, a young person or a student who had not completed his full-time education and had no parent or step-parent, to his guardian,

but only for a period of two years from the relevant date.

(6) In the case of a person to whom or for whose support payment referred to in this paragraph is made, any income which derives from any payment of income or capital made under or deriving from any of the Trusts.

(7) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (2) to (6), any reference to the Trusts shall be construed as including a reference to the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation and the London Bombings Relief Charitable Fund.

37. Any housing benefit.

38. Any payment made by the Secretary of State to compensate for the loss (in whole or in part) of entitlement to housing benefit.

39. - 40. not used



- 41.** Any payment to a juror or witness in respect of attendance at a court other than compensation for loss of earnings or for the loss of a benefit payable under the benefit Acts.
- 42.** Not used
- 43.** Any payment in consequence of a reduction of council tax under section 13 or section 80 of the 1992 Act (reduction of liability for council tax).
- 44.** Not used
- 45.** (1) Any payment or repayment made—
(a) as respects England, under regulation 5, 6 or 12 of the National Health Service (Travel Expenses and Remission of Charges) Regulations 2003 (travelling expenses and health service supplies);
(b) as respects Wales, under regulation 5, 6 or 11 of the National Health Service (Travelling Expenses and Remission of Charges) (Wales) Regulations 2007 (travelling expenses and health service supplies);
(c) as respects Scotland, under regulation 3, 5 or 11 of the National Health Service (Travelling Expenses and Remission of Charges) (Scotland) (No. 2) Regulations 2003 (travelling expenses and health service supplies).
(2) Any payment or repayment made by the Secretary of State for Health, the Scottish Ministers or the Welsh Ministers, which is analogous to a payment or repayment, mentioned in sub-paragraph (1).
- 46.** Any payment made to such persons entitled to receive benefits as may be determined by or under a scheme made pursuant to section 13 of the Social Security Act 1988 in lieu of vouchers or similar arrangements in connection with the provision of those benefits (including payments made in place of healthy start vouchers, milk tokens or the supply of vitamins).
- 47.** Any payment made by either the Secretary of State for Justice or by the Scottish Ministers under a scheme established to assist relatives and other persons to visit persons in custody.
- 48.** (1) Where an applicant's applicable amount includes an amount by way of a family premium, £15 of any payment of maintenance, other than child maintenance, whether under a court order or not, which is made or due to be made by the applicant's former partner, or the applicant's partner's former partner.
(2) For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1) where more than one maintenance payment falls to be taken into account in any week, all such payments such be aggregated and treated as if they were a single payment.
(3) A payment made by the Secretary of State in lieu of maintenance shall, for the purpose of sub-paragraph (1), be treated as a payment of maintenance made by a person specified in sub-paragraph (1).
- 48A.** (1) Any payment of child maintenance made or derived from a liable relative where the child or young person in respect of whom the payment is made is a member of the applicant's family, except where the person making the payment is the applicant or the applicant's partner.
(2) In paragraph (1) 'child maintenance' means any payment towards the maintenance of a child or young person, including any payment made voluntarily and payments made under;
(a) the Child Support Act 1991;
(b) the Child Support (Northern Ireland) Order 1991;
(c) a court order;
(d) a consent order;
(e) a maintenance agreement registered for execution in the Books of Council and Session or the sheriff court books;
'liable relative' means a person listed in regulation 54 (interpretation) of the Income Support (General) Regulations 1987, other than a person falling within sub-paragraph (d) of that



definition.

- 49.** Not used
- 50.** Any payment (other than a training allowance) made, whether by the Secretary of State or any other person, under the Disabled Persons (Employment) Act 1944 to assist disabled persons to obtain or retain employment despite their disability.
- 51.** Any guardian's allowance.
- 52.** (1) If the applicant is in receipt of any benefit under Parts 2, 3 or 5 of the Act, any increase in the rate of that benefit arising under Part 4 (increases for dependants) or section 106(a) (unemployability supplement) of the Act, where the dependant in respect of whom the increase is paid is not a member of the applicant's family.
- (2) If the applicant is in receipt of any pension or allowance under Part 2 or 3 of the Naval, Military and Air Forces Etc. (Disablement and Death) Service Pensions Order 2006, any increase in the rate of that pension or allowance under that Order, where the dependant in respect of whom the increase is paid is not a member of the applicant's family.
- 53.** Any supplementary pension under article 23(2) of the Naval, Military and Air Forces Etc. (Disablement and Death) Service Pensions Order 2006 (pensions to surviving spouses and surviving civil partners) and any analogous payment made by the Secretary of State for Defence to any person who is not a person entitled under that Order.
- 54.** In the case of a pension awarded at the supplementary rate under article 27(3) of the Personal Injuries (Civilians) Scheme 1983(a) (pensions to widows, widowers or surviving civil partners), the sum specified in paragraph 1(c) of Schedule 4 to that Scheme.
- 55.** (1) Any payment which is
- (a) made under any of the Dispensing Instruments to a widow, widower or
 - (b) surviving civil partner of a person;
 - (i) whose death was attributable to service in a capacity analogous to service as a member of the armed forces of the Crown; and
 - (ii) whose service in such capacity terminated before 31st March 1973; and equal to the amount specified in article 23(2) of the Naval, Military and Air Forces Etc. (Disablement and Death) Service Pensions Order 2006.
- (2) In this paragraph 'the Dispensing Instruments' means the Order in Council of 19th December 1881, the Royal Warrant of 27th October 1884 and the Order by His Majesty of 14th January 1922 (exceptional grants of pay, non-effective pay and allowances).
- 55A.** Any council tax reduction or council tax benefit to which the applicant is entitled.
- 56.** Except in a case which falls under sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 16 of Schedule 3, where the applicant is a person who satisfies any of the conditions of sub-paragraph (2) of that paragraph, any amount of working tax credit up to £17.10
- 56A.–56B.** Not used
- 57.** Any payment made under section 12B of the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968, or under sections 12A to 12D of the National Health Service Act 2006 (direct payments for health care) or under regulations made under section 57 of the Health and Social Care Act 2001 (direct payments).
- 58.** (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), in respect of a person who is receiving, or who has received, assistance under the self-employment route, any payment to that person–
- (a) to meet expenses wholly and necessarily incurred whilst carrying on the commercial activity;



(b) which is used or intended to be used to maintain repayments on a loan taken out by that person for the purpose of establishing or carrying on the commercial activity, in respect of which such assistance is or was received.

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) shall apply only in respect of payments, which are paid to that person from the special account

59. (1) Any payment of a sports award except to the extent that it has been made in respect of any one or more of the items specified in sub-paragraph (2).
(2) The items specified for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) are food, ordinary clothing or footwear, household fuel or rent of the applicant or where the applicant is a member of a family, any other member of his family, or any council tax or water charges for which that applicant or member is liable.
(3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) 'food' does not include vitamins, minerals or other special dietary supplements intended to enhance the performance of the person in the sport in respect of which the award was made.
60. Where the amount of subsistence allowance paid to a person in a reduction week exceeds the amount of income-based jobseeker's allowance that person would have received in that reduction week had it been payable to him, less 50p, that excess amount.
61. In the case of an applicant participating in an employment zone programme, any discretionary payment made by an employment zone contractor to the applicant, being a fee, grant, loan or otherwise.
62. Any discretionary housing payment paid pursuant to regulation 2(1) of the Discretionary Financial Assistance Regulations 2001
63. (1) Any payment made by a local authority or by the Welsh Ministers to or on behalf of the applicant or his partner relating to a service which is provided to develop or sustain the capacity of the applicant or his partner to live independently in his accommodation.
(2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) 'local authority' includes, in England, a county council.
64. Not used
65. Any payments to a claimant made under section 49 of the Children and Families Act 2014 (personal budgets and direct payments)
66. Any payment of child benefit.
67. Any Bereavement Support payments made under the Bereavement Support Payment Regulations 2017.
68. Any payments disregarded for Housing Benefits under the Social Security (*Emergency Funds*) Amendment) Regulations 2017



Schedule 5
Capital to be disregarded⁴⁶

⁴⁶ Any amounts shown in this schedule will be updated in line with the Housing Benefit Regulations 2006 as amended

1. The dwelling together with any garage, garden and outbuildings, normally occupied by the applicant as his home including any premises not so occupied which it is impracticable or unreasonable to sell separately, in particular 5, in Scotland, any croft land on which the dwelling is situated; but, notwithstanding section 15 (calculation of income and capital of members of applicant's family and of polygamous marriage), only one dwelling shall be disregarded under this paragraph.
- A2. Any payment made to the applicant in respect of any travel or other expenses incurred, or to be incurred, by him in respect of his participation in the Mandatory Work Activity Scheme but only for 52 weeks beginning with the date of receipt of the payment.
- A3. Any payment made to the applicant in respect of any travel or other expenses incurred or to be incurred, by him in respect of his participation in the Employment, Skills and Enterprise Scheme or Back to Work Scheme but only for 52 weeks beginning with the date of receipt of the payment but only for 52 weeks beginning with the date of receipt of payment.
2. Any premises acquired for occupation by the applicant, which he intends to occupy as his home within 26 weeks of the date of acquisition or such longer period as is reasonable in the circumstances to enable the applicant to obtain possession and commence occupation of the premises.
3. Any sum directly attributable to the proceeds of sale of any premises formerly occupied by the applicant as his home which is to be used for the purchase of other premises intended for such occupation within 26 weeks of the date of sale or such longer period as is reasonable in the circumstances to enable the applicant to complete the purchase.
4. Any premises occupied in whole or in part—
 - (a) by a partner or relative of a single applicant or any member of the family as his home where that person has attained the qualifying age for state pension credit or is incapacitated;
 - (b) by the former partner of the applicant as his home; but this provision shall not apply where the former partner is a person from whom the applicant is estranged or divorced or with whom he had formed a civil partnership that has been dissolved.
5. Where an applicant is on income support, an income-based jobseeker's allowance or an income-related employment and support allowance, the whole of his capital.
6. Where the applicant is a member of a joint-claim couple for the purposes of the Jobseekers Act 1995 and his partner is on income-based jobseeker's allowance, the whole of the applicant's capital.
7. Any future interest in property of any kind, other than land or premises in respect of which the applicant has granted a subsisting lease or tenancy, including sub-leases or sub-tenancies.
8. (1) The assets of any business owned in whole or in part by the applicant and for the purposes of which he is engaged as a self-employed earner, or if he has ceased to be so engaged, for such period as may be reasonable in the circumstances to allow for disposal of any such asset.
 (2) The assets of any business owned in whole or in part by the applicant where—
 - (a) he is not engaged as a self-employed earner in that business by reason of some disease or bodily or mental disablement; but
 - (b) he intends to become engaged or, as the case may be, re-engaged as a self-employed earner in that business as soon as he recovers or is able to become engaged or re-engaged in that business;

for a period of 26 weeks from the date on which the claim for council tax reduction is made, or is treated as made, or, if it is unreasonable to expect him to become engaged

or re-engaged in that business within that period, for such longer period as is reasonable in the circumstances to enable him to become so engaged or re-engaged.

(3) In the case of a person who is receiving assistance under the self-employment route, the assets acquired by that person for the purpose of establishing or carrying on the commercial activity in respect of which such assistance is being received.

(3) In the case of a person who has ceased carrying on the commercial activity in respect of which assistance was received as specified in sub-paragraph (3), the assets relating to that activity for such period as may be reasonable in the circumstances to allow for disposal of any such asset.

9. (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), any arrears of, or any concessionary payment made to compensate for arrears due to the non-payment of;
- (a) any payment specified in paragraphs 7, 9 or 10 of Schedule 4;
 - (b) an income-related benefit under Part 7 of the Act;
 - (c) an income-based jobseeker's allowance;
 - (d) any discretionary housing payment paid pursuant to regulation 2(1) of the Discretionary Financial Assistance Regulations 2001;
 - (e) working tax credit and child tax credit
 - (f) an income-related employment and support allowance

but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date of the receipt of arrears or of the concessionary payment.

(2) In a case where the total of any arrears and, if appropriate, any concessionary payment referred to in sub-paragraph (1) relating to one of the specified payments, benefits or allowances amounts to £5,000 or more (referred to in this sub-paragraph and in sub-paragraph (3) as 'the relevant sum') and is

- (a) paid in order to rectify or to compensate for, an official error as defined in regulation 1(2) of the Decisions and Appeals Regulations; and
- (b) received by the applicant in full on or after 14th October 2001,

sub-paragraph (1) shall have effect in relation to such arrears or concessionary payment either for a period of 52 weeks from the date of receipt, or, if the relevant sum is received in its entirety during the award of council tax reduction, for the remainder of that award if that is a longer period.

- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph(2), 'the award of council tax reduction' means—
- (a) the award in which the relevant sum is first received (or the first part thereof where it is paid in more than one instalment); and
 - (b) where that award is followed by one or more further awards which, or each of which, begins immediately after the end of the previous award, such further award provided that for that further award the applicant;
 - (i) is the person who received the relevant sum; or
 - (ii) is the partner of the person who received the relevant sum, or was that person's partner at the date of his death.

10. Any sum
- (a) paid to the applicant in consequence of damage to, or loss of the home or any personal possession and intended for its repair or replacement; or
 - (b) acquired by the applicant (whether as a loan or otherwise) on the express condition that it is to be used for effecting essential repairs or improvement to the home, which is to be used for the intended purpose, for a period of 26 weeks from the date on which it was so paid or acquired or such longer period as is reasonable in the circumstances to effect the repairs, replacement or improvement.

- 11.** Any sum—
- (a) deposited with a housing association as defined in section 1(1) of the Housing Associations Act 1985 or section 338(1) of the Housing (Scotland) Act 1987 as a condition of occupying the home;
 - (b) which was so deposited and which is to be used for the purchase of another home, for the period of 26 weeks or such longer period as may be reasonable in the circumstances to enable the applicant to complete the purchase.
- 12.** Any personal possessions except those which have been acquired by the applicant with the intention of reducing his capital in order to secure entitlement to council tax reduction or to increase the amount of that support.
- 13.** The value of the right to receive any income under an annuity or the surrender value (if any) of such an annuity.
- 14.** Where the funds of a trust are derived from a payment made in consequence of any personal injury to the applicant or applicant's partner, the value of the trust fund and the value of the right to receive any payment under that trust.
- 14A.** (1) Any payment made to the applicant or the applicant's partner in consequence of any personal injury to the applicant or, as the case may be, the applicant's partner.
- (2) But sub-paragraph (1)
- (a) applies only for the period of 52 weeks beginning with the day on which the applicant first receives any payment in consequence of that personal injury;
 - (b) does not apply to any subsequent payment made to him in consequence of that injury (whether it is made by the same person or another);
 - (c) ceases to apply to the payment or any part of the payment from the day on which the applicant no longer possesses it;
 - (d) does not apply to any payment from a trust where the funds of the trust are derived from a payment made in consequence of any personal injury to the applicant.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(c), the circumstances in which an applicant no longer possesses a payment or a part of it include where the applicant has used a payment or part of it to purchase an asset.
- (4) References in sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) to the applicant are to be construed as including references to his partner (where applicable).
- 15.** The value of the right to receive any income under a life interest or from a life rent.
- 16.** The value of the right to receive any income, which is disregarded under paragraph 13 of Schedule 3 or paragraph 25 of Schedule 4.
- 17.** The surrender value of any policy of life insurance.
- 18.** Where any payment of capital falls to be made by instalments, the value of the right to receive any outstanding instalments.
- 19.** Any payment made by a local authority in accordance with section 17, 23B, 23C or 24A of the Children Act 1989 or, as the case may be, section 12 of the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968 or sections 22, 29 or 30 of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995 (provision of services for children and their families and advice and assistance to certain children).
- 19A.** (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), any payment (or part of a payment) made by a local authority in accordance with section 23C of the Children Act 1989 or section 29 of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995 (local authorities' duty to promote welfare of children and powers to grant financial assistance to persons in, or formerly in, their care) to a person ('A') which A passes on to the



applicant.

- (2) Sub-paragraph (1) applies only where A;
- (a) was formerly in the applicant's care, and
 - (b) is aged 18 or over, and
 - (c) continues to live with the applicant.

- 20.** Any social fund payment made pursuant to Part 8 of the Act.
- 21.** Any refund of tax which falls to be deducted under section 369 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (deduction of tax from certain loan interest) on a payment of relevant loan interest for the purpose of acquiring an interest in the home or carrying out repairs or improvements to the home.
- 22.** Any capital which, by virtue of sections 31 or 51 (capital treated as income, treatment of student loans) is to be treated as income.
- 23.** Where any payment of capital is made in a currency other than sterling, any banking charge or commission payable in converting that payment into sterling.
- 24.** (1) Any payment made under or by the Trusts, the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited, the Independent Living Fund (2006), the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the Charitable Fund.

(2) Any payment by or on behalf of a person who is suffering or who suffered from haemophilia or who is or was a qualifying person, which derives from a payment made under or by any of the Trusts to which sub-paragraph (1) refers and which is made to or for the benefit of—

- (a) that person's partner or former partner from whom he is not, or where that person has died was not, estranged or divorced or with whom he has formed a civil partnership that has not been dissolved or, where that person has died, had not been dissolved at the time of that person's death;
- (b) any child who is a member of that person's family or who was such a member and who is a member of the applicant's family; or
- (c) any young person who is a member of that person's family or who was such a member and who is a member of the applicant's family.

(3) Any payment by or on behalf of the partner or former partner of a person who is suffering or who suffered from haemophilia or who is or was a qualifying person provided that the partner or former partner and that person are not, or if either of them has died were not, estranged or divorced or, where the partner or former partner and that person have formed a civil partnership, the civil partnership has not been dissolved or, if either of them has died, had not been dissolved at the time of the death, which derives from a payment made under or by any of the Trusts to which sub-paragraph (1) refers and which is made to or for the benefit of—

- (a) the person who is suffering from haemophilia or who is a qualifying person;
- (b) any child who is a member of that person's family or who was such a member and who is a member of the applicant's family; or
- (c) any young person who is a member of that person's family or who was such a member and who is a member of the applicant's family.

(4) Any payment by a person who is suffering from haemophilia or who is a qualifying person, which derives from a payment under or by any of the Trusts to which sub-paragraph (1) refers, where—

- (a) that person has no partner or former partner from whom he is not estranged or divorced or with whom he has formed a civil partnership that has not been dissolved, nor any child or young person who is or had been a member of that person's family; and
- (b) the payment is made either;

- (i) to that person's parent or step-parent; or
- (ii) where that person at the date of the payment is a child, a young person or a student who has not completed his full-time education and has no parent or step-parent, to his guardian, but only for a period from the date of the payment until the end of two years from that person's death.

(5) Any payment out of the estate of a person who suffered from haemophilia or who was a qualifying person, which derives from a payment under or any of the Trusts to which sub-paragraph (1) refers, where

- (a) that person at the date of his death (the relevant date) had no partner or former partner from whom he was not estranged or divorced or with whom he had formed a civil partnership that had not been dissolved, nor any child or young person who was or had been a member of his family; and
- (b) the payment is made either;
 - (i) to that person's parent or step-parent; or
 - (ii) where that person at the relevant date was a child, a young person or a student who had not completed his full-time education and had no parent or step-parent, to his guardian, but only for a period of two years from the relevant date.

(6) In the case of a person to whom or for whose support payment referred to in this paragraph is made, any capital resource which derives from any payment of income or capital made under or deriving from any of the Trusts.

(7) For the purposes of sub-paragraphs (2) to (6), any reference to the Trusts shall be construed as including a reference to the Fund, the Eileen Trust, MFET Limited the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation, and the London Bombings Relief Charitable Fund.

25. (1) Where an applicant has ceased to occupy what was formerly the dwelling occupied as the home following his estrangement or divorce from, or dissolution of his civil partnership with, his former partner, that dwelling for a period of 26 weeks from the date on which he ceased to occupy that dwelling or, where the dwelling is occupied as the home by the former partner who is a lone parent, for so long as it is so occupied.

(2) In this paragraph 'dwelling' includes any garage, garden and outbuildings, which were formerly occupied by the applicant as his home and any premises not so occupied which it is impracticable or unreasonable to sell separately, in particular, in Scotland, any croft land on which the dwelling is situated.

26. Any premises where the applicant is taking reasonable steps to dispose of those premises, for a period of 26 weeks from the date on which he first took such steps, or such longer period as is reasonable in the circumstances to enable him to dispose of those premises.

27. Any premises which the applicant intends to occupy as his home, and in respect of which he is taking steps to obtain possession and has sought legal advice, or has commenced legal proceedings, with a view to obtaining possession, for a period of 26 weeks from the date on which he first sought such advice or first commenced such proceedings whichever is the earlier, or such longer period as is reasonable in the circumstances to enable him to obtain possession and commence occupation of those premises.

28. Any premises which the applicant intends to occupy as his home to which essential repairs or alterations are required in order to render them fit for such occupation, for a period of 26 weeks from the date on which the applicant first takes steps to effect those repairs or alterations, or such longer period as is necessary to enable those repairs or alterations to be carried out.

29. Any payment made by the Secretary of State to compensate for the loss (in whole or in part) of



entitlement to housing benefit.

30. Not used
31. The value of the right to receive an occupational or personal pension.
32. The value of any funds held under a personal pension scheme
33. The value of the right to receive any rent except where the applicant has a reversionary interest in the property in respect of which rent is due.
34. Any payment in kind made by a charity or under or by the Trusts, the Fund, MFET Limited, the Skipton Fund, the Caxton Foundation or the Independent Living Fund (2006).
35. Any payment made pursuant to section 2 of the 1973 Act or section 2 of the Enterprise and New Towns (Scotland) Act 1990, but only for the period of 52 weeks beginning on the date of receipt of the payment.
36. Not used.
37. Any payment in consequence of a reduction of council tax under section 13 or, as the case may be, section 80 of the Local Government Finance Act 1992 (reduction of liability for council tax), but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date of the receipt of the payment.
38. Any grant made in accordance with a scheme made under section 129 of the Housing Act 1988 or section 66 of the Housing (Scotland) Act 1988 (schemes for payments to assist local housing authority and local authority tenants to obtain other accommodation) which is to be used—
 - (a) to purchase premises intended for occupation as his home; or
 - (b) to carry out repairs or alterations which are required to render premises fit for occupation as his home,for a period of 26 weeks from the date on which he received such a grant or such longer period as is reasonable in the circumstances to enable the purchase, repairs or alterations to be completed and the applicant to commence occupation of those premises as his home.
39. Any arrears of supplementary pension which is disregarded under paragraph 53 of Schedule 4 (sums to be disregarded in the calculation of income other than earnings) or of any amount which is disregarded under paragraph 54 or 55 of that Schedule, but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date of receipt of the arrears.
40. (1) Any payment or repayment made—
 - (a) as respects England, under regulation 5, 6 or 12 of the National Health Service (Travel Expenses and Remission of Charges) Regulations 2003 (travelling expenses and health service supplies);
 - (b) as respects Wales, under regulation 5, 6 or 11 of the National Health Service (Travelling Expenses and Remission of Charges) (Wales) Regulations 2007 (travelling expenses and health service supplies);
 - (c) as respects Scotland, under regulation 3, 5 or 11 of the National Health Service (Travelling Expenses and Remission of Charges) (Scotland) (No. 2) Regulations 2003 (travelling expenses and health service supplies),but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date of receipt of the payment or repayment.
(2) Any payment or repayment made by the Secretary of State for Health, the Scottish Ministers or the Welsh Ministers, which is analogous to a payment, or repayment mentioned in subparagraph (1), but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date of the receipt of the payment or repayment.
41. Any payment made to such persons entitled to receive benefits as may be determined by or



under a scheme made pursuant to section 13 of the Social Security Act 1988 in lieu of vouchers or similar arrangements in connection with the provision of those benefits (including payments made in place of healthy start vouchers, milk tokens or the supply of vitamins), but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date of receipt of the payment.

- 41A.** Any payment made under Part 8A of the Act (entitlement to health in pregnancy grant).
- 42.** Any payment made either by the Secretary of State for Justice or by Scottish Ministers under a scheme established to assist relatives and other persons to visit persons in custody, but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date of the receipt of the payment.
- 43.** Any payment (other than a training allowance) made, whether by the Secretary of State or any other person, under the Disabled Persons (Employment) Act 1944 to assist disabled persons to obtain or retain employment despite their disability.
- 44.** Not used
- 45.** Any payment made by a local authority under section 3 of the Disabled Persons (Employment) Act 1958 to homeworkers assisted under the Blind Homeworkers' Scheme.
- 46.** (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), where an applicant satisfies the conditions in section 131(3) and (6) of the Act (entitlement to alternative maximum council tax reduction), the whole of his capital.
(2) Where in addition to satisfying the conditions in section 131(3) and (6) of the Act the applicant also satisfies the conditions in section 131(4) and (5) of the Act (entitlement to the maximum council tax reduction), sub-paragraph (1) shall not have effect.
- 47.** (1) Any sum of capital to which sub-paragraph (2) applies and
(a) which is administered on behalf of a person by the High Court or the County Court under Rule 21.11(1) of the Civil Procedure Rules 1998 or by the Court of Protection;
(b) which can only be disposed of by order or direction of any such court; or
(c) where the person concerned is under the age of 18, which can only be disposed of by order or direction prior to that person attaining age 18.
(2) This sub-paragraph applies to a sum of capital which is derived from;
(a) an award of damages for a personal injury to that person; or
(b) compensation for the death of one or both parents where the person concerned is under the age of 18.
- 48.** Any sum of capital administered on behalf of a person in accordance with an order made under section 13 of the Children (Scotland) Act 1995, or under Rule 36.14 of the Ordinary Cause Rules 1993 or under Rule 128 of those Rules, where such sum derives from
(a) award of damages for a personal injury to that person; or
(b) compensation for the death of one or both parents where the person concerned is under the age of 18.
- 49.** Any payment to the applicant as holder of the Victoria Cross or George Cross.
- 50.** Not used
- 51.** In the case of a person who is receiving, or who has received, assistance under the self-employment route, any sum of capital which is acquired by that person for the purpose of establishing or carrying on the commercial activity in respect of which such assistance is or was received but only for a period of 52 weeks from the date on which that sum was acquired.
- 52.** (1) Any payment of a sports award for a period of 26 weeks from the date of receipt of that payment except to the extent that it has been made in respect of any one or more of the items specified in sub-paragraph (2).

(2) The items specified for the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) are food, ordinary clothing or footwear, household fuel or rent of the applicant or, where the applicant is a member of a family, any other member of his family, or any council tax or water charges for which that applicant or member is liable.

(3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) 'food' does not include vitamins, minerals or other special dietary supplements intended to enhance the performance of the person in the sport in respect of which the award was made.

- 53.** (1) Any payment;
- (a) by way of an education maintenance allowance made pursuant to–
 - (i) regulations made under section 518 of the Education Act 1996;
 - (ii) regulations made under section 49 or 73(f) of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980;
 - (iii) directions made under section 73ZA of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980 and paid under section 12(2)(c) of the Further and Higher Education (Scotland) Act 1992;
 - (b) corresponding to such an education maintenance allowance, made pursuant to;
 - (i) section 14 or section 181 of the Education Act 2002 (power of Secretary of State and National Assembly for Wales to give financial assistance for purposes related to education or childcare, and allowances in respect of education or training); or
 - (ii) regulations made under section 181 of that Act ;

or in England, by way of financial assistance made pursuant to section 14 of the Education Act 2002.

- (2) Any payment, other than a payment to which sub-paragraph (1) applies, made pursuant to;
- (a) regulations made under section 518 of the Education Act 1996;
 - (b) regulations made under section 49 of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980; or
 - (c) directions made under section 73ZA of the Education (Scotland) Act 1980 and paid under section 12(2)(c) of the Further and Higher Education (Scotland) Act 1992, in respect of a course of study attended by a child or a young person or a person who is in receipt of an education maintenance allowance or other payment made pursuant to any provision specified in sub-paragraph (1).

53A.-53B. Not used

54. In the case of an applicant participating in an employment zone programme, any discretionary payment made by an employment zone contractor to the applicant, being a fee, grant, loan or otherwise, but only for the period of 52 weeks from the date of receipt of the payment.

55. Any arrears of subsistence allowance paid as a lump sum but only for the period of 52 weeks from the date of receipt of the payment.

56. Where an ex-gratia payment of £10,000 has been made by the Secretary of State on or after 1st February 2001 in consequence of the imprisonment or interment of–

- (a) the applicant;
- (b) the applicant's partner;
- (c) the applicant's deceased spouse or deceased civil partner; or
- (d) the applicant's partner's deceased spouse or deceased civil partner,

by the Japanese during the Second World War, £10,000.

- 57.** (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), the amount of any trust payment made to an applicant or a member of an applicant's family who is
- (a) a diagnosed person;
 - (b) the diagnosed person's partner or the person who was the diagnosed person's partner at the date of the diagnosed person's death;
 - (c) a parent of a diagnosed person, a person acting in place of the diagnosed person's

- parents or a person who was so acting at the date of the diagnosed person's death; or
- (d) a member of the diagnosed person's family (other than his partner) or a person who was a member of the diagnosed person's family (other than his partner) at the date of the diagnosed person's death.
- (2) Where a trust payment is made to;
- (a) a person referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(a) or (b), that sub-paragraph shall apply for the period beginning on the date on which the trust payment is made and ending on the date on which that person dies;
- (b) a person referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(c), that sub-paragraph shall apply for the period beginning on the date on which the trust payment is made and ending two years after that date;
- (c) a person referred to in sub-paragraph (1)(d), that sub-paragraph shall apply for the period beginning on the date on which the trust payment is made and ending—
- (i) two years after that date; or
- (ii) on the day before the day on which that person—
- (aa) ceases receiving full-time education; or
- (bb) attains the age of 20,
- whichever is the latest.
- (3) Subject to sub-paragraph (4), the amount of any payment by a person to whom a trust payment has been made or of any payment out of the estate of a person to whom a trust payment has been made, which is made to an applicant or a member of an applicant's family who is—
- (a) the diagnosed person's partner or the person who was the diagnosed person's partner at the date of the diagnosed person's death;
- (b) a parent of a diagnosed person, a person acting in place of the diagnosed person's parents or a person who was so acting at the date of the diagnosed person's death; or
- (c) a member of the diagnosed person's family (other than his partner) or a person who was a member of the diagnosed person's family (other than his partner) at the date of the diagnosed person's death, but only to the extent that such payments do not exceed the total amount of any trust payments made to that person.
- (4) Where a payment as referred to in sub-paragraph (3) is made to—
- (a) a person referred to in sub-paragraph (3)(a), that sub-paragraph shall apply for the period beginning on the date on which that payment is made and ending on the date on which that person dies;
- (b) a person referred to in sub-paragraph (3)(b), that sub-paragraph shall apply for the period beginning on the date on which that payment is made and ending two years after that date; or
- (c) person referred to in sub-paragraph (3)(c), that sub-paragraph shall apply for the period beginning on the date on which that payment is made and ending—
- (i) two years after that date; or
- (ii) on the day before the day on which that person
- (aa) ceases receiving full-time education; or
- (bb) attains the age of 20,
- whichever is the latest.
- (5) In this paragraph, a reference to a person—
- (a) being the diagnosed person's partner;
- (b) being a member of a diagnosed person's family;
- (c) acting in place of the diagnosed person's parents,
- at the date of the diagnosed person's death shall include a person who would have been such a person or a person who would have been so acting, but for the diagnosed person residing in a care home, an Abbeyfield Home or an independent hospital on that date.



- (6) In this paragraph– ‘diagnosed person’ means a person who has been diagnosed as suffering from, or who, after his death, has been diagnosed as having suffered from, variant Creutzfeld- Jakob disease;
‘relevant trust’ means a trust established out of funds provided by the Secretary of State in respect of persons who suffered, or who are suffering, from variant Creutzfeld-Jakob disease for the benefit of persons eligible for payments in accordance with its provisions;
‘trust payment’ means a payment under a relevant trust.
- 58.** The amount of any payment, other than a war pension, to compensate for the fact that the applicant, the applicant’s partner, the applicant’s deceased spouse or deceased civil partner or the applicant’s partner’s deceased spouse or deceased civil partner
- (a) was a slave labourer or a forced labourer;
 - (b) had suffered property loss or had suffered personal injury; or
 - (c) was a parent of a child who had died,
- during the Second World War.
- 59** (1) Any payment made by a local authority, or by the Welsh Ministers, to or on behalf of the applicant or his partner relating to a service, which is provided to develop or sustain the capacity of the applicant or his partner to live independently in his accommodation.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1) ‘local authority’ includes in England a county council.
- 60.** Any payment made under regulations made under section 57 of the Health and Social Care Act 2001 or under section 12B of the Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968, or under section 12A to 12D of the National Health Service Act 2006 (direct payments for health care).
- 61.** Any payment made to the applicant pursuant to regulations under section 2(6)(b), 3 or 4 of the Adoption and Children Act 2002.
- 62.** Any payment made to the applicant in accordance with regulations made pursuant to section 14F of the Children Act 1989 (special guardianship support services).
- 63.** Any payments to a claimant made under section 49 of the Children and Families Act 2014 (personal budgets and direct payments)
- 64.** Any Bereavement Support payments made under the Bereavement Support Payment Regulations 2017.
- 65.** Any payments disregarded for Housing Benefits under the Social Security (*Emergency Funds*) Amendment) Regulations 2017

COUNCIL

17 JANUARY 2019

PART 1 – PUBLIC DOCUMENT

TITLE OF REPORT: CONSTITUTIONAL REVIEW 2019

REPORT OF: SERVICE DIRECTOR: LEGAL AND COMMUNITY & MONITORING OFFICER

EXECUTIVE MEMBER: MRS L.A. NEEDHAM, LEADER OF THE COUNCIL

COUNCIL PRIORITY: RESPONSIVE AND EFFICIENT

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This reports sets out the review undertaken and recommends amendments to update the Council's Constitution.

2. RECOMMENDATIONS

- 2.1 That Full Council approves the proposed amendments set out in Appendix A, *or where alternatives are proposed – such alternatives as Members deem appropriate.*

3. REASONS FOR RECOMMENDATIONS

To ensure the Council meets its statutory obligations and continues to improve its working practices.

4. ALTERNATIVE OPTIONS CONSIDERED

None.

5. CONSULTATION WITH RELEVANT MEMBERS AND EXTERNAL ORGANISATIONS

- 5.1 During August 2018 it was agreed with Group Leaders that the approach to the Constitutional review would be as follows:
- Seek Members review comments (these were sought by email on 12 September for response by 15 October);
 - Seek Senior Officer's comments (again these were sought by email on 12 September for response by 15 October and then initial schedule reviewed by SMT / Directors);
 - Group Leaders meeting to discuss the comments, queries and proposed amendments to the Constitution (or seek a steer on the possible approach); this took place on 29 November with all Group Leaders;
 - Some further proposals received from officers and amendments finalised following the Group Leaders' meeting;
 - A copy of the updated Schedule with proposed amendments circulated to Group Leaders 21 December for consideration by them/ their Groups.

6. FORWARD PLAN

This report does not contain a recommendation on a key decision and has not been referred to in the Forward Plan.

7. BACKGROUND

- 7.1 The Monitoring Officer has a duty to monitor and review the Constitution. Under paragraph 2.4 of the Constitution there is an annual straightforward (necessary/ minor) and triennial in-depth review process. The last detailed review took place in April 2018 and June 2018 – following the Senior Management restructure. The latter amendments took effect on 1 June with the agreement of the Leader and were further ratified by Full Council in July 2018.
- 7.3 The key proposals are set out in this report and these / the Appendix A, have been discussed with Group Leaders prior to finalising in December (as per section 5 above). The key issues/ proposals are detailed in section 8 below. The remainder are set out (section, proposal, response/ amendment proposed where relevant) in Appendix A to this report.

8. RELEVANT CONSIDERATIONS

Appointment of substitute Members of Committees and Sub-Committees (section 4.8.4):

- 8.1 This has been proposed by the Labour Group on the basis of increased flexibility. Having considered this with Group Leaders there was no consensus as to whether this should be approved by Full Council. The proposed wording in Appendix A would cover the replacement of a substitute Member for a particular meeting, providing this request was made in writing to the Democratic Services Manager (as Proper Officer) seven clear days before the meeting, and such nominated substitute must have already undertaken any compulsory training for that particular Committee.

Section 4 Full Council and Council Procedure Rules

Proposed ‘guillotine’ provision for meeting length (section 4.8 – new 4.8.5(e)):

- 8.2 It is proposed that a ‘guillotine’ provision will be inserted into the standing orders that will limit the duration of meetings. The provision is that after 2.5 hours the meeting will automatically end unless a resolution is passed prior to that, that the meeting should continue. Any resolution will state how much longer the meeting should continue for, and there would be no limit to the number of resolutions that may be passed.
- 8.3 Similar guillotine provisions are used by a number of other local authorities across the country, although with stricter requirements (i.e. only one extension/ up to a fixed amount of time) and are considered to be an effective way to focus attention on the progression of the meeting, for better decision making and health and safety of Members/ Officers (i.e. to prevent unduly lengthy, or late evening meetings).

Maximum number of questions to be asked by Members (Section 4.8.11(d)):

- 8.4 Currently, providing questions are received in time, three questions can be put to the meeting (and the rest are answered subsequently). Where more than three questions are submitted, then the Proper Officer conducts a ballot to determine which shall be put to the meeting, and written responses are provided to the remaining questions.
- 8.5 Two different proposals were initially received: one from the Labour Group for up to three questions per political Group, per meeting; and one from the Liberal Democrats for up to five questions to be put to the meeting.
- 8.6 A potential compromise proposal is up to two questions per political Group to be put, per meeting. This was discussed by Group Leaders on 29 November, although this was subject to further consideration by the Groups. *Note this compromise proposal is the only one set out in Appendix A.*

- 8.7 This would be on the same time receipt basis and if approved some additional / consequential changes will be required to (f) – unanswered questions; and (h) – form of the answer to be provided, as these will no longer apply (and would be deleted).

Section 8 Regulatory Committees: Licensing and Appeals Committee; Licensing Sub-Committee (section 8.2.3, 8.3.1):

- 8.8 There is a proposal to increase the remit of the Licensing and Appeals Committee, as a regulatory body for relevant non-executive matters that are not reserved to Full Council. The proposals are that substantial changes to such policies now fall to the Committee (as opposed to just officers), and that minor ones are reserved to officers in consultation with the Chair and relevant Executive Members. Secondly the proposal is for the Committee to have a monitoring function for licensing work/ performance in the form of an annual report. This latter one is in addition to that discussed with Group Leaders in November; however, would appear to be a sensible approach to allowing the Committee oversight of all Licensing activity during the year / performance data. If approved by Full Council, then pure performance percentages for inspections will not be reported to Overview & Scrutiny *on this issue* – although it will be reported with other matters to the Licensing and Appeals Committee.
- 8.9 There is also a proposal to have a reserve Member to the Sub-Committee selected from the existing Membership of the Licensing and Appeals Committee, who shall receive the papers/ have access to them and should be available to attend and hear the matter. This means that the reserve would then participate *if* one of the three Sub-Committee Members is unable to do so. This is to prevent unnecessary delay, adjournments, cover unforeseen conflicts of interest situations and act as a training tool for Members.

Section 8 Regulatory Committees: Planning Control Committee (Appendix 1 to Section 8, paragraph 1.3)

- 8.10 A proposal was received for a form of priority in the public speaking slot at Planning Control Committee for Parish/ Town Councils. Group Leaders asked for this to be explored (ie whether or what other Council did in this situation).
- 8.11 Officers have established that across the county there is a mixed approach to this issue. Some Councils do not make any special provision for Parish/Town Councils to speak at planning meetings, and simply limit speaking to those in favour and those against. A number of District Councils provide an allocated speaking slot for Parish/ Town Councils, although the speaking time is generally limited to three minutes per speaking group, whereas NHDC permits five minutes per speaking group. Hertfordshire County Council limits the number of presentations to three with at least one for and one against, whilst giving priority to certain categories of speakers including Parish Councils. *Given this, no change is currently proposed in Appendix A, as the Parish / Town Councils may ask their Ward Advocate to speak on their behalf in any event, as per Appendix 2 to Section 8.*
- 8.12 The alternative would be to give any Parish/ Town Council that registers to speak the first part 'priority' of the five minute slot (and amend Appendix 1 to Section 8 accordingly).

Section 9 Area Committees (additional term of reference 9.8.2 (h)):

- 8.13 A proposal was put forward that Area Committees be given the ability to recognise good deeds in their communities (this is in addition to the provision in the Constitution for Full Council to recognise exceptional contribution to the community by groups or individuals). This was discussed by Group Leaders but no consensus expressed. The proposal is to amend the Area Committees terms of reference to provide for a localised

Area Committee recognition (once annually) for an exceptional contribution (to that locality).

Section 10 Other Committees; Finance Audit and Risk Committee (section 10.1.5 new (h))

- 8.14 As Members will be aware, the Council will create its first wholly owned company during the forthcoming year. Whilst the Cabinet Sub-Committee (Local Authority Trading Companies' Shareholder) exists to represent the Council's interests as shareholder, it has been proposed that the Finance, Audit and Risk Committee has an additional term of reference to receive reports on the financial performance of any of the Council's wholly owned limited companies. This will provide a forum for such information to be presented to the Council, at the instigation of the Chief Finance Officer (Service Director: Resources), outside of the purely shareholding capacity, but will not place any obligation for such reports to be presented other than in that situation.

Section 14 Responsibility for Functions (Delegations to Officers and the Executive):

- 8.15 Delegation to the Service Director: Commercial: It is proposed to make changes to the delegation of this Service Director in relation to property transactions. Currently the officer limit for these matters is £250,000 and this is proposed for increase to £500,000. In light of the current market and the need for the Council to move at pace to respond to commercial opportunities, it is considered that the Service Director's delegated authority should be increased. The limits of Cabinet's authority would be adjusted to account for the increase to the officer delegation. It should be noted that any expenditure would still need to be in accordance with the Investment Strategy (Capital Programme) that has been agreed by Full Council.
- 8.16 In terms of leases, between £50,000 and £250,000 the Constitution has no specified process. It is therefore proposed that the Service Director: Commercial's remit is increase to fill that gap; however, as with above, that this is also increased to £500,000 and such decision to be made in consultation with the Service Director: Resources. It is proposed that any transactions in excess of £500,000 would be referred to Cabinet.

9. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS

- 9.1 Full Council's terms of reference include "approving of adopting the Policy Framework". The Policy Framework includes the Constitution.
- 9.2 Section 37 Local Government Act 2000 requires the Council to have in place a Constitution and to keep that Constitution under review. The Local Government Act 2000 section 9P sets out the requirements of a local authority's Constitution, including the requirements to prepare it and keep it up to date and the requirement to make it available for public inspection.

10. FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

There are no specific financial implications to the report. However, some of the proposed changes alter the delegations in relation to financial matters.

11. RISK IMPLICATIONS

Ensuring the Council has appropriate governance arrangements in place is an important risk mitigation measure. The Council's Constitution is a fundamental part of those governance arrangements.

12. EQUALITIES IMPLICATIONS

- 12.1 In line with the Public Sector Equality Duty, public bodies must, in the exercise of their functions, give due regard to the need to eliminate discrimination, harassment, victimisation, to advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between those who share a protected characteristic and those who do not.
- 12.2 The proposals made within this report for changes to the Constitution do not materially affect any groups with protected characteristics, but it is the aim, in revising the Constitution and its content regularly, to make it more 'user friendly', ensure transparency and also to encourage greater participation in the Council's decision making processes.

13. SOCIAL VALUE IMPLICATIONS

The Social Value Act and "go local" policy do not apply to this report.

14. HUMAN RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS

None.

15. APPENDICES

Appendix A – Schedule of proposed amendments to the Constitution.

16. CONTACT OFFICERS

- 16.1 Jeanette Thompson; Service Director: Legal & Community; Monitoring Officer
jeanette.thompson@north-herts.gov.uk; ext 4370
- 16.2 Marie Searle; Property Solicitor
marie.searle@north-herts.gov.uk; ext 4315
- 16.3 Ian Couper; Service Director: Resources and s151 Officer
ian.couper@north-herts.gov.uk; ext 4243
- 16.4 Reuben Ayavoo; Senior Corporate Policy Officer
reuben.avayoo@north-herts.gov.uk; ext 4212

17. BACKGROUND PAPERS

Current NHDC Constitution 2018: <https://www.north-herts.gov.uk/home/council-and-democracy/council-constitution>

This page is intentionally left blank

Reference	Subject	Raised by	Response/ reason Reference to changes made to denote <i>proposal</i> unless statutory requirement.	Legal response / comments
Section 1				
	Democratic Services Manager/ Committee Services Manager	Service Director Legal & Community	Change reference to Proper Officer – where appropriate to refer to Democratic Services Manager. Committee Services Manager to become Committee, Member and Scrutiny Manager (post phase 2 restructure) Committee & Member Services Officer to become Committee, Member and Scrutiny Officer.	This will be undertaken and checked post acceptance of amendments.
Update address	Remove Town Lodge	Service Director Legal & Community		
Section 2				
Section 2.2	“Deputy Chief Officer” definition	Service Director Legal & Community	Updating reference to legislation. “Deputy Chief Officer” As defined under <u>the Local Government & Housing Act 1989 and relevant Regulations 2(8) of the Local Authorities (Standing Orders) Regulations 1989</u>	Propose Amend.
Section 2.2	Reference to Democratic Services Manager	Service Director Legal & Community	Propose: Remove definition as Democratic Services Manager now in place. Wording: “Democratic Services Manager”: Reference to such an officer shall be deemed to include the Service Director: Legal and Community, or such officer sub-delegated to undertake any of the specific functions detailed in the Constitution.	Propose: Delete.

Section 2.2	“Forward Plan”	Service Director Legal & Community	<p>Forward Plan is a plan of Key Decisions of the Executive which are both legally defined under legislation requirements Regulations 8-9 LAMA 2012¹.</p> <p>In this Constitution the Notice of Key Decision and a Notice of Private Meeting of the Cabinet published by the Council over a four month period (including decisions to be made by the Cabinet, individual Cabinet Members or delegated officers, which are not Key Decisions).</p>	<p>Propose: Delete part that should not legally be included.</p>
Section 2.2	“Proper Officer”	Service Director Legal & Community	<p>means an officer to whom a duty/ role or decision making power is delegated, as set out at Section 14.5 – <u>14.6 unless otherwise described.</u></p>	
Section 3				
Section 3.1.1(a)	Information available to Members of the public	Cllr Deakin-Davies	<p>Relevant text: A programme of meetings is available by contacting the Council direct, logging on to the Council’s website or looking at the Council’s notice board outside the Council Offices or library notice boards in Baldock, Hitchin, Letchworth or Royston.</p> <p>Question: why not posted in Knebworth? 5,000 people live there.</p>	<p>Response: <i>The libraries in the four named towns do not accept notices from the Council any more. This issue will be raised once again with HCC / relevant Libraries as a separate point. However it is not considered appropriate for the constitution to require notifications to be placed in locations outside of the Council’s control.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>A programme of meetings is available by contacting the Council direct, logging on to the Council’s website or looking at the Council’s notice board outside the Council Offices or library notice boards in Baldock, Hitchin, Letchworth or Royston.</i></p>

¹ Local Authorities (Executives Arrangements) (Meetings and Access to Information) (England) Regulations 2012/2089

Section 3.1.1(b)	Forward Plan	Service Director Legal & Community	<p>Proposed amendment: add word 'Key' Key Decisions will be taken by the Cabinet to reflect the LAMA2012² requirement.</p> <p>Reason: to meet the legal requirements defined under LAMA 2012.</p>	Propose Amend.
Section 4				
Section 4.3	The Budget	Service Director: Resources	<p>Change: Deletion of reference to virement limits.</p> <p>The budget includes the allocation of financial resources to different services and projects, proposed contingency funds, the Council Tax base, setting the Council Tax and decision relating to the control of the Council's borrowing requirement <i>and</i> the control of its capital expenditure and the setting of virement limits. The Full Council will decide the Council's overall revenue budget and overall capital budget and any changes to these. (See Section 16 for how the Council can change the Policy Framework or Budget referred to it for approval by the Cabinet.)</p> <p>Reason: The budget does not set virement limits - these are set in the Financial Regulations.</p>	Propose: Amend.
Section 4.4.1 (cc)		Democratic Services Manager/ Service Director Legal & Community	<p>Delete: "setting the scale of fees for elections;"</p> <p>Reason: This is a matter for the Returning Officer, with benchmarking across to other authorities and shall be notified to Members and staff with a Delegated Decision (via MIS and the Council's website).</p>	Propose: Delete.

² Local Authorities (Executives Arrangements) (Meetings and Access to Information) (England) Regulations 2012/2089

<p>Section 4.4.1(dd)</p>	<p>Functions of Full Council</p>	<p>Service Director: Resources</p>	<p>Change: Deletion of word 'statement' <i>"the treasury management strategy statement"</i></p> <p>Reason: Changes to statutory guidance mean that the Council will have an integrated treasury and capital strategy that will be known as an investment strategy. The deletion of statement gives scope for the treasury management strategy to be contained within an integrated investment strategy.</p>	<p>Propose: (dd)(cc) <i>approving the treasury management strategy (as may be incorporated in an integrated investment strategy);</i></p> <p><i>NB becomes (cc) with scale of fees provision deleted.</i></p>
<p>Section 4.8</p>	<p>Rules for Conducting Meetings ("Standing Orders")</p>	<p>Service Director Legal & Community</p>	<p>Change: Insertion of 'guillotine' provisions that limit the duration of meetings and mean that the meeting comes to an end after a fixed number of hours.</p> <p><i>Proposal of requirement for a resolution just prior to 2.5 hours of the meeting, if required to extend.</i></p> <p>Reason: <i>As meetings ordinarily start at 7.30pm this will mean that if a meeting is to go beyond 10pm a resolution should be passed to extend the guillotine.</i></p> <p><i>If 2.5 hours is considered too short then 3 hours is proposed.</i></p> <p><i>The purposes of good decision making/ health and safety of Members/ Officers leaving the meeting. Many authorities have this provision for such a reason.</i></p>	<p>Propose: <i>"All Council meeting shall end after two and a half hours ("the guillotine"). Prior to the guillotine provision coming into effect, where the Members believe that a specific extension of time is warranted, this may be agreed by a resolution to extend the guillotine for a specified period. There is no limit to the number of extensions which may be agreed under this rule. No motion to extend the guillotine shall be permitted once the guillotine has fallen."</i></p> <p>NB this to be inserted as a new 4.8.5(e). Heading to be amended to include "length"</p>

<p>Section 4.8.4</p>	<p>Appointment of Substitute Members of Committees and Sub-Committees & task and finish groups.</p>	<p>Cllr Martin Stears- Handscomb and Cllr J Billing</p>	<p>Amendment to the rules for Member substitution – current wording below: 4.8.4 Appointment of Substitute Members of Committees and Sub-Committees (a) As well as allocating seats on Committees and Sub-Committees the Council will allocate seats in the same manner for substitute Members. (b) For Committees or Sub-Committees listed at 4.8.4(c) below, but not the Cabinet, the Council will appoint a proportionate number of substitutes in respect of each political group as that group holds ordinary seats on that Committee or sub-Committee. The number of substitutes shall be a maximum of 40% of the total of each group’s full Committee Membership rounded up to the nearest whole number. (c) The Committees for which substitutes are permitted are; Employment Committee, Planning Control Committee, Overview and Scrutiny Committee, Finance, Audit and Risk Committee, Council Tax Setting Committee, Joint Staff Consultative Committee and the Standards Committee. (d) Substitute Members will have all the powers and duties of any ordinary Member of the Committee but will not be able to exercise any special powers or duties exercised by the person they are substituting. (e) Substitute Members may attend meetings in that capacity only: (i) to take the place of the ordinary Member for whom they are designated substitute; (i) when the ordinary Member will be absent for the whole of the meeting; (ii) after notifying the Proper Officer by 12 noon on the day of the meeting of the intended substitution.” Reason for change: The Labour Group has asked for this flexibility.</p>	<p>Response: <i>Power to appoint to the Committee Task and Finish Groups unlikely to be feasible for project-based work – specifically as may be part of evidence gathering exercise/ over a period of time. For that reason not recommended</i></p> <p>Potentially propose amendment for a new (c): <i>“The Democratic Services Manager (‘the Proper Officer’) may change substitutes on Committees or Sub-Committees for a meeting at the request and in consultation with the relevant Group Leader providing:</i> (i) any Member substituting must have undertaken any pre-Committee compulsory training before such a request is made to act as the substitute; and (ii) the request is sent in writing to the Proper Officer at least 7 clear working days before the meeting. (iii) The appointment as substitute is for a particular meeting and shall then cease.”</p> <p>NB would also need to update Service Director/ Proper Officer delegation in section 14.6.9 (xx) update the wording. This will also, in any event, require updating to include replacement of substitutes and Members during the year – as currently this only covers a permanent vacancy.</p>
----------------------	---	---	--	--

4.8.10 (c)	(c) Notice of Questions	Cllr Deakin-Davies	Add wording to allow copies of the questions to be available to Members prior to the meeting.	<p>Propose: Amend (c) and add:</p> <p><i>“The Proper Officer shall endeavour to make the question that has been accepted under 4.8.10 available to Members three days before the day of the meeting.”</i></p>
Section 4.8.10 (i)	Questions by the Public – Written answers	Cllr Deakin-Davies	<p>Proposed change: written answers to questions by the public should be made publically available.</p> <p>Any question which cannot be dealt with during public question time, either because of lack of time or because of the non-attendance of the Councillor to whom it was to be put, will be dealt with by a written answer as soon as practicable and <i>any written answer will be made publically available including on the Council’s website.</i></p> <p>Reason for change:</p>	<p>Propose: Amend</p> <p><i>Any question which cannot be dealt with during public question time, either because of lack of time or because of the non-attendance of the Councillor to whom it was to be put, will be dealt with by a written answer as soon as practicable <u>and any written answer will be made available on the Council’s website.</u></i></p>
Section 4.8.11(d)	Questions by Members (Maximum number of questions)	Labour Group Group Leaders discussion	<p>Change: The maximum number of questions to apply for each political group</p> <p>The maximum number of questions that may be asked at any meeting of the Full Council by <i>each political group</i> is two.</p> <p>Reason for change:</p>	<p><i>NB initially proposed by Labour Group as 3 – the compromise is 2 each Political Group. (i) will then be deleted as not applicable as any questions to be answered at the meeting.</i></p> <p><i>To read (d):</i> <i>“Notice of Questions</i> <i><u>For any one meeting each Political Group A Member may submit ask a up to two questions under 4.8.11(b) or 4.8.11(c) if either:</u></i> <i>(ii) they have given at least three clear working days’ notice in writing of the question to the Proper Officer; or</i></p>

				<p><i>(iii)the question relates to urgent matters, they have the consent of the Chairman or Member to whom the question is to be put and the content of the question is given to the Proper Officer by 10.00 a.m. on the day of the meeting.”</i></p> <p>NB is accepted, consequential amendments then required to (f) and (h).</p>
4.8.11(f)	Response to questions that are not answered at the meeting	Cllr Clark	Asked for time period for this to be provided.	<p><i>Propose:</i> <i>“...Any outstanding questions unable to be asked should be addressed in writing to the Proper Officer for a written response to be provided to all Members <u>via the website with the draft minute or in any event within 5 working days of the meeting.</u>”</i></p> <p>NB this provision will be deleted if the amendments to (f) are accepted as there will be no additional questions that are left unanswered.</p>

<p>Section 4.8.12(a)</p>	<p>Motions on notice - notice</p>	<p>Cllr Deakin-Davies</p>	<p>Relevant text: Except for motions which can be moved without notice under 4.8.13 written notice of every motion, signed by at least five Members where the motion calls for the removal from office of the Leader, or by at least two Members in any other case, must be delivered to the Proper Officer not later than midday, six clear working days (excluding the day of the meeting and the day of delivery) before the Council meeting at which it is to be considered. Motions received will be entered in a book open to public inspection. The Proper Officer may, with the consent of the Chairman, refuse to accept a motion if the matter to which it relates is referred to in the Forward Plan for consideration at a later meeting or there is otherwise an intention to consider that matter at a meeting of the Council within the next three (3) months.</p> <p>Question: Do we actually have a book? Shouldn't this be on the website. I suggest that motions presented don't always follow this rule. have we got data? Also all Councillors should be informed by email of such motions on the same day it is put in the "Book".</p>	<p>Response: <i>The procedure has been recently reviewed so that Committee services keep an electronic record of motions received.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>Amend slightly.</i></p> <p><i>"..Motions received will be retained in a record of motions entered in a book which is open to public inspection."</i></p>
<p>Section 4.8.12(a)</p>	<p>Motions on notice - notice</p>	<p>Liberal Democrats</p>	<p>Comment: we also have the silly situation where we are forced to submit motions on paper with 2 signatures, when we are meant to e moving to a paperless system. Then there is also the problem of the paper being lost or misfiled</p>	<p>Response: Can email/ or send a photograph of a signed motion. Will clarify with a footnote:</p> <p><i>"The motion may be signed by hand, or by electronic signatures and may either be emailed or delivered by hand to the Proper Officer."</i></p>

4.8.12(a)	Motions on notice - notice	Cllr Weeks/ Cllr Needham	To be signed by the proposer and seconder	<p>Propose: Add those words underlined: “Except for motions which can be moved without notice under 4.8.13, written notice of every motion, signed by at least five Members where the motion calls for the removal from office of the Leader, or by at least two Members in any other case (<u>as proposer and seconder</u>), must be delivered to the Proper..”</p>
Section 4.8.23(a)	Decision Making	Cllr Clark	<p>Relevant text: In order to vote on an agenda item at any meeting of the Council or a Committee or Sub-Committee, a Member must be present in the room for the entirety of the debate and consideration of that item.</p> <p>Question: Apart from Planning & Licensing, how do other Councils deal with this?</p>	<p>Response: The Constitution contains provisions to deal with this as set out.</p> <p>Members should be addressed as a point of order to the Chairman if it is not picked up by officers.</p> <p>Proposed: No change.</p>
Section 4.8.24	Application to Committees and Sub-Committees	Service Director Legal and Community	The application of standing orders to Committees and Sub-Committees will need to be reviewed once Constitutional amendments have been approved.	
Section 5				
Section 5.6.18	Clarification to s9D LGA 2000 Executive powers	Service Director Legal & Community/ Planning Lawyer	<p>Amend to make this clearer that these Article 4 direction fall under 5.6.20 definition.</p> <p>Pursuant to section 9D of the Local Government Act 2000 all functions of an authority are executive functions unless they are specified as not in either the 2000 Act or the Local Authorities (Functions and Responsibilities) (England) Regulations 2000 (as amended). Whilst some planning</p>	<p><i>To exercise the Authority’s functions as Local Planning Authority and to receive reports on: strategic planning matters, applications for, approval/ designation, consultations/ referendums revocation (or recommend revocation of)</i></p>

			functions cannot be the responsibility of the Executive, the confirmation of an Article 4 direction is not a specified function, although it originates under the 2015 Order/ Town & Country Planning Act 1990, so should make it clear this is an Executive decision.	<i>neighbourhood plans, Article 4 Directions and orders, (except to the extent that those functions are by law the responsibility of the Council or delegated to the Service Director: Regulatory).</i>
Section 5.6.29	Waivers to Contract Procurement Rules (CPR)	Subsequent to FAR approval of proposed changes to the CPR 17.12.18	Consequential amendments required recommended to Council on 17 January 2019, if approved.	Propose Wording as amended: <i>“To approve any waiver of Contract Procurement Rules referred to it by the Monitoring Officer and section 151 Officer, in accordance with the adopted policy Rules.”</i>
Section 5.6.39	Functions of Cabinet	Service Director: Resources	Change: Deletion of word ‘statement’ at 5.6.39 (By recommendation to Council) The treasury management strategy statement Reason: Changes to statutory guidance mean that the Council will have an integrated treasury and capital strategy that will be known as an investment strategy. The deletion of statement gives scope for the treasury management strategy to be contained within an integrated investment strategy.	Propose: Delete word, and also add: <i>“The treasury management strategy statement (as may be incorporated in an integrated investment strategy);”</i>

<p>Section 5.11.3</p>	<p>Cabinet Sub-Committee (Local Authority Trading Companies' Shareholder) – Roles and Functions</p>	<p>Cllr Deakin-Davies</p>	<p>Proposed change: addition of new functions:</p> <p>(k) to report to Council the annual accounts of such Limited Companies we are shareholders in and also where there is a material change in the financial performance of the company, or where legal action has been taken against the company or where any service failure or customer failure has occurred”</p> <p>(l) as part of the reporting on budgetary matters quarterly, the current trading state and health of the company will be reported to Council”.</p> <p>(m) the financial contribution target from such companies will be reported to Council annually</p>	<p>Response: <i>Amendments proposed instead to Finance Audit & Risk Committees terms of reference under 10.1.5 below.</i></p>
<p>Section 6</p>				
<p>Section 6.1.2</p>	<p>Scrutiny - introduction</p>	<p>Cllr Deakin-Davies</p>	<p>Relevant text: Scrutiny should be carried out in a constructive way and should aim to contribute to the delivery of efficient and effective services that meet the needs and aspirations of local inhabitants. A Scrutiny Committee should not shy away from the need to challenge and question decisions and make constructive criticism.</p> <p>Comment/proposed change: Local inhabitants is not accurate enough... O&S scrutinises the EHDC and NHDC waste contract, EH people are not our local inhabitants... Also Careline could have customers anywhere in the UK, it is not a geographically bound service.</p>	<p>Response: <i>Localism Act 2011 s9F powers specific power to (e) “to make reports or recommendations to the authority or the executive on matters which affect the authority’s area or the inhabitants of that area”</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>“Scrutiny should be carried out in a constructive way and should aim to contribute to the delivery of efficient and effective services that meet the needs and aspirations of local inhabitants and customers. A Scrutiny Committee should not shy away from the need to challenge and question decisions and make constructive criticism. “</i></p>

Section 8				
Section 8.2.3	Licensing and Appeals Committee – Meetings	Licensing Manager	<p>Proposed change:</p> <p>(1) additional function of the Committee to adopt or approve substantial changes to Licensing policies with minor amendments to be delegated to an officer in consultation with the chair of the Licencing and Appeals Committee and the relevant Executive Member.</p> <p>(2) Also to receive an annual report on Licensing activities including performance information.</p>	<p>Response: Expand remit. Propose: 8.2.3 new (c) To consider and amend other non-executive Licensing Policies (minor amendments to be delegated to the Licensing Manager in consultation with the Chairman of Committee and the relevant Executive Member).</p> <p>New (d) to receive an annual report on Licensing activities including performance information.</p>
Section 8.3.1	Licensing Sub-Committee Membership	Licensing Manager & Democratic Services Manager	<p>Proposed change: To add a reserve Member to the Sub-Committee selected from the existing Membership of the Licensing and Appeals Committee, who shall be sent the papers and should be available to attend and hear the matter, in the event of the inability of one of the three Sub-Committee Members being able to attend/ participate.</p> <p>Reason: To prevent unnecessary delays and adjournments. Enable the Council to meet statutory hearing deadlines in the event of an inquorate Sub-Committee.</p>	<p>Propose: Final wording to be considered/ checked. Currently propose</p> <p>8.3.1 Membership Three (3) Councillors shall be appointed to a Licensing Sub-Committee <u>and one non-voting reserve Councillor.</u></p> <p><u>Footnote: In the event that one of the voting Councillors cannot attend, has a conflict or is unable to participate for any other reason for that meeting, the reserve shall become a voting Member and no further reserve is required.</u></p>

<p>Section 8.4.4</p>	<p>Planning control Committee</p>	<p>Service Director: Regulatory</p>	<p>Proposed change: addition of the words ‘for determination or consideration’</p> <p>Reason for change: to clarify Planning Control Committee’s role</p>	<p>Response: Propose: <i>Include amended wording: “The Planning Control Committee exercises those functions of the local planning authority not delegated to the Service Director: Regulatory. The Service Director: Regulatory may refer a matter to the Planning Control Committee for <u>determination or consideration</u> if the application is controversial or of significant public interest or is likely to have a significant impact on the environment.”</i></p>
<p>Section 8.4.5(c)(ii)/ (iii) & ‘support’ of ward Member/ call in to PCC</p>	<p>Planning Control Committee</p>	<p>Strategic Sites Planning Officer</p>	<p>1 To make it clearer that supporting a referral into Committee does not preclude a Member necessarily being involved in the debate or vote if they are on the Committee (so long as they have not shown any pre-determination of the issue/ do not have an interest). Re-define ‘support’.</p> <p>Reason: to prevent impression of bias and predetermination and legal challenge to the Council.</p>	<p>Response: Propose: <i>Change ‘supported’ in (iii) 1 & 2</i></p> <p>1 with: <i>“<u>detailing the</u> reasons based upon one or more material planning considerations :” or</i></p> <p>2 with: <i><u>detailing the</u> reasons that the matter is in the wider public interest.</i></p>

		Service Director: Legal & Democratic	2 Remove also word 'declarable' interest and leave interest (to cover both Declarable and Disclosable Pecuniary Interests).	<p><i>Update footnote to (ii) B footnote* to state: provided that the written opinion of the parish or town council is supported in writing by at least one Ward Member³ within five working days of the Ward Member being notified of the representation.</i></p> <p><i>* ¹ A Ward Member with an <u>an declarable</u> interest must not be involved in the referral to Committee. This to apply to (iii): Footnote:3 as above.</i></p>
Appendix 1 to Section 8 paragraph 1.3	Procedure for public participation in the consideration by the Planning Control Committee	Cllr Steve Jarvis	Proposed change: An issue has been raised with me about the public speaking rights at Planning Committee meetings. The first objector (or supporter) to respond gets complete control over who else may speak. This is a particular concern when it results in a parish, town or community council (which has been elected by the local community and are of course statutory consultees) being unable to speak. I think that we should consider giving some sort of priority to these councils when allocating speaking time (clearly only in relation to planning applications within their own area).	<p>Response: <i>Parish/ Town Councils are statutory consultees for certain types of development as per Schedule 4(d) Development Management Procedure Order</i></p> <p><i>No consistent approach with other Councils who have less time and a 3 minute slot for example, for the Parish/ 3 for others – but possible disparity leads to unfairness in process.</i></p>

				<p>Propose: <i>The issue could then be that Members of public are unable to speak, is the Ward Advocate the route for the Parish etc. under Appendix 2 to Section 8, therefore no change proposed.</i></p> <p><i>Other option would be to give the Parish Council the priority share of the public speaking time.</i></p>
Appendix 1 to Section 8 paragraph 1.3	Procedure for public participation in the consideration by the Planning Control Committee	Cllr Deakin-Davies	<p>Proposed change: amended wording in relation to time keeping responsibilities.</p> <p>The time slot allocated to each group of speakers should not exceed 5 minutes. This time limit should be strictly adhered to in order to ensure that the business of the Committee can be transacted as expeditiously as is reasonably possible. It is suggested that the The Committee & Member Services Officer or another officer not directly involved will have <i>has</i> the responsibility for time-keeping rather than the Chairman</p>	<p>Response: <i>Suggest this is better dealt with outside of the Appendix.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>Delete last sentence and deal with under normal officer procedure. It to read: Subject to suggestions above, to read: “The time slot allocated to each group of speakers should not exceed 5 minutes. This time limit should be strictly adhered to in order to ensure that the business of the Committee can be transacted as expeditiously as is reasonably possible.”</i></p>

<p>Appendix 3 to Section 8 paragraph 13</p>	<p>North Hertfordshire District Council's Member's Planning Code of Good Practice</p>	<p>Cllr Deakin-Davies</p>	<p>Change: replace the word 'of' with 'on'</p> <p>Don't put pressure of <i>on</i> Planning Officers to change their recommendations before a Committee.</p> <p>Reason for change: to correct a typographical error</p>	<p>Response: <i>Accepted.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>Amend.</i></p>
<p>Section 9</p>				
<p>Section 9.8.</p>	<p>Area Committee terms of reference</p>	<p>Cllr Grindal</p>	<p>Proposed change: I would like to introduce at the Letchworth Area Committee a scheme by which the Committee can recognise just a small good deed or work by an individual or a group from within the town that has shown good community spirit.</p> <p>It is a simple concept and in no way is intended to infringe on the annual Chairman awards which provide the opportunity to recognise those 'bigger' good deeds from across the district. On a few occasions recently I have been approached and told about 'small' good deeds performed by individuals and I feel that it would be no bad thing to recognise that. After all, engaging with the residents must be a priority and following the successful first Letchworth Town Talk this would be another small step in a closer link with our community and in inviting individuals or groups to the Committee to recognise those good deeds with a certificate would assist in that aim. Discussion with group leaders and annually to consider by Annual Committee,</p>	<p>Response: <i>Council terms of reference allow for recognising community. However, could allow a localised recognition. If so proposal below.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>Amend 9.8.2 add “(h) At the penultimate annual meeting the Committee may recognise exceptional contribution to the community in their Area Committee locality by an individual.”</i></p>

Section 10				
Section 10.1.5	Terms of Reference of the Finance, Audit and Risk Committee	Cllr Deakin-Davies	<p>Proposed change: to add to the terms of reference</p> <p><i>Monitor and report on the financial performance of Limited Companies where we are a shareholder with 51% plus shareholding, plus any risk factors to that company, and our actions to mitigate them</i></p> <p>Reason for change:</p>	<p>Response: <i>This is arguably covered by Cabinet Sub-Committee (Local Authority Trading Companies' Shareholder), as role is to represent Council's shareholder interest, as per 5.11.4 (a) & 5.11 (g)(ii). An addition to the terms of reference of this committee could be added to allow for any additional reporting by the directors of such companies.</i></p> <p>Propose: new <i>"(h) To receive reports referred by the Chief Finance Officer on the financial performance of any of the Council's wholly owned limited companies."</i> NB subsequent numbering will change.</p>
Section 14				
Section 14.5.2	Responsibility for Local Choice Functions	Cllr Martin Stears-Handscomb and Cllr J Billing	<p>Comment/proposed change: Consideration of more flexibility on local choice functions – so that Cabinet can refer these to full Council if they wish.</p>	<p>Response: <i>Discussed with Group Leaders Issues with LGA 2000, relevant functions regulations, issues with executive key decisions/ notice and certainty. Local choice and taking that forward as a larger piece of work in 2019/20 if wished to proceed.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>Following discussions with Group Leaders this to form part of a larger piece of work during 2019/20.</i></p>

<p>Section 14.6.7(b)(i) (C) and 14.6.12(b)(i) (B)</p>	<p>Delegation of Authority – Service Director: Commercial</p>	<p>Deputy Chief Executive</p>	<p>Proposed change: increase in the value of property acquisition that falls within officer delegation:</p> <p>In consultation with the Service Director: Resources, acquisition of land where the purchase price or premium does not exceed £250500,000 or such higher figure as is determined in any adopted Asset Management Strategy.</p> <p>Reason: to improve the Council’s ability to move at pace and respond to commercial opportunities</p>	<p>Response: Discussed with Group Leaders and propose to increase limit of officer delegation.</p> <p>NB. If adopted then the Cabinet delegation at 5.6.20 will need to be amended to reflect this flexibility in the Service Director: Commercial’s delegation. The values in the delegation for the Service Director: Resources would also be updated to mirror this change.</p>
<p>Section 14.6.7(b)(i) (B)</p>	<p>Delegation of Authority – Service Director: Commercial</p>	<p>Service Director: Resources</p>	<p>Proposed change: Should we explicitly cover the gap between £50,000 and £250,000 for leases etc.</p> <p>Reason for change: for clarification as the Constitution is presently silent on this point</p>	<p>Response: <i>The Constitution shows that the Executive Member for Finance and IT is responsible for ‘leadership, strategic planning and development, partnership working and decision making within Asset Management’.</i> <i>This is presently relied upon to provide authority for rent reviews and minor land matters that exceed officer delegation. It should be noted that there is currently no Cabinet delegation for minor land matters of this type.</i> <i>Can explicitly amend.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>Increase officer delegation to make it consistent with the disposals values: granting, negotiating and settling terms of leases, licences, easements, wayleaves, rent reviews, assignment of leases, the appointment of arbitrators / experts, consents,</i></p>

				<p>guarantees and all other minor land matters where the initial annual rent (after the expiry of any rent free period) or the premium does not exceed £500,000 provided that in respect of any matter where the initial rent or premium exceeds £50,000 the decision shall be made in consultation with the Executive Member for Finance and IT.</p> <p>NB. Cabinet delegation would be amended to explicitly cover matters where the value exceeds £500,000.</p>
Section 14.6.9(a) (xxviii)	Delegation to Service Director Legal & Community		<p>To move to Service Director: Customers</p> <p>To verify foreign national pensions⁴. Reason: direct access via customer services in reception.</p>	<p>Propose: Move to 14.6.8 (a) & read: (viii) To authorise officers to provide a discretionary service to verify foreign national pensions.</p>
Section 14.6.9(b) (xiv)	Licensing delegation for Service Director Legal & Community	Service Director Legal & Community	<p>Drafting Unclear, as not delegated elsewhere:</p> <p>“Licensing including all functions under all relevant Licensing Executive Member for Housing and Environmental Health which shall include: legislation other than matters reserved to the Licensing and Appeals Committee, street trading, Sunday trading and scrap metal”</p>	<p>Propose: Amend as set out. Licensing and Appeals Committee and Full Council, street trading, Sunday trading and scrap metal.</p>

⁴ This is a discretionary service and may be subject to a charge

<p>Section 14.6.9(b) (xiv)</p>	<p>Licensing delegation for Service Director Legal & Community</p>	<p>Cllr Needham</p>	<p>Conservative Group would like this to be set by the Executive Member.</p>	<p>Propose: <i>Amend Executive Member's for Housing and Environmental Health delegation in respect of Taxi fares:</i></p> <p>being consulted on the s <i>Setting of charges and fees for hackney carriages and private hire vehicles <u>in consultation with the Service Director: Legal and Community and Licensing Manager.</u></i></p>
<p>Section 14.6.9(b) (xvii) A and B</p>	<p>Delegation of Authority – Service Director: Legal and Community</p>	<p>Cllr Deakin-Davies</p>	<p>Relevant text:</p> <p>A safeguarding of vulnerable adults Executive Member for Housing and Environmental Health B safeguarding of children and young people Executive Member for Community Engagement and Rural Affairs which shall include promoting the Council's position in regard to children's services across the district and in particular the protection of children and young people.</p> <p>Question: I wonder why two Executive Members here are involved, Housing and Environment which includes health, such as Careline which a growing number of young people use... What does the Exec for Com Engagement and Rural affairs do for children and young people?</p>	<p>Propose: <i>Have consulted the Leader move to Executive Member for Community Engagement and Rural Affairs:</i></p> <p><i>Amalgamate A for Service Director Legal & Community. Executive Members to read:</i> <i>"promoting the Council's position in regards <u>to children's services safeguarding responsibilities</u> across the district and in particular the protection of children, and young people undertaken within its safeguarding responsibilities"</i></p>

<p>14.6.11(b) (viii)</p>	<p>Delegation of Authority Service Director: Regulatory</p>	<p>Service Director: Regulatory</p>	<p>Proposed change: addition to service responsibilities: All functions relating to National Infrastructure Planning including co-ordination of the Council’s response to any consultation, Examination or other any other matter concerned with major infrastructure projects.</p> <p>Reason for change: to clarify responsibility for such matters including responsibility for responding to Development Consent Orders</p>	<p>Propose: <i>Amend.</i></p>
<p>Section 14.6.12(a) (vi)</p>	<p>Delegation of Authority Service Director: Resources</p>	<p>Service Director: Resources</p>	<p>Relevant text: ‘to appoint the Members of the Independent Remuneration Panel, having first consulted the Monitoring Officer and Group Leaders as to any reason why Member(s) not independent’</p> <p>Proposed change: I think this should move to the Director: Legal and Community</p>	<p>Response: <i>Move to 14.6.9</i></p> <p>Propose:</p>
<p>Section 14.6.18</p>	<p>Champions</p>	<p>Cllr Deakin-Davies</p>	<p>Change: Where’s the Business Champion</p> <p>Reason: we should have one</p>	<p>Response: <i>Discussed with Group Leader and to remove all together as will be covered on the Council’s website where applicable.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>Delete from Constitution.</i></p>

Section 15				
Section 15.6.3	Access to Information – Supply of copies	Cllr Deakin-Davies	<p>Relevant text: If you are not a Member of the Committee you should access the agenda and reports via the Council’s website.</p> <p>Comment/proposed change: Probably better say moderngov or whatever it’s called as well.</p>	<p>Response: <i>Can indicate that – but still currently (legally) need to make paper copy available for inspection under the LGA 1972 & LAMA 2012 for the public</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>Footnote (via Modern.gov or replacement Committee management system).</i></p>
Section 16				
Section 16.1	Budget and Policy Framework Procedure Rules The Framework for Executive Decisions	Cllr Deakin-Davies	<p>Comment/proposed change: Something needs to go in here about Limited companies we own or JV with.</p>	<p>Response: <i>This will be dealt with under the Governance arrangements agreed, but does not specially have to be covered by the Budget and Policy Framework that is approved by Council, as there will generally be separate and independent arrangements for budgets/accounts approval etc.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>No further action.</i></p>
Section 17				
General		Cllr Deakin-Davies	<p>Proposed change: Hey maybe gender neutral stuff needed everywhere here . So no his/her things just “their”...</p>	<p>Response: <i>If you wish to take this further, will need to do so for next review, to ensure this reads correctly in finished document.</i></p> <p>Propose: <i>No further action at this stage.</i></p>